

7 April 2025

**MEMORANDUM OF LAW
FOR THE FUTURES INDUSTRY ASSOCIATION
AND THE INTERNATIONAL SWAPS AND DERIVATIVES ASSOCIATION, INC.**

in respect of (i) the recognition under English law of (a) New York law as the governing law of the Clearing Agreement and the Agent-Trust arising under the Clearing Agreement and (b) U.S. Federal law as the governing law of certain arrangements relating to Customer Property arising under the Clearing Agreement and (ii) the mandatory principles of English law that may affect the positions reached under New York law or U.S. Federal law in respect of the operation of the Clearing Agreement, the Agent-Trust and those arrangements.

Linklaters

Linklaters LLP
One Silk Street
London EC2Y 8HQ

Telephone (+44) 20 7456 2000

Facsimile (+44) 20 7456 2222

Ref L-306672

This communication is confidential and may be privileged or otherwise protected by work product immunity.

Linklaters LLP is a limited liability partnership registered in England and Wales with registered number OC326345. It is a law firm authorised and regulated by the Solicitors Regulation Authority. The term partner in relation to Linklaters LLP is used to refer to a member of Linklaters LLP or an employee or consultant of Linklaters LLP or any of its affiliated firms or entities with equivalent standing and qualifications. A list of the names of the members of Linklaters LLP together with a list of those non-members who are designated as partners and their professional qualifications is open to inspection at its registered office, One Silk Street, London EC2Y 8HQ or on www.linklaters.com and such persons are either solicitors, registered foreign lawyers or European lawyers.

Please refer to www.linklaters.com/regulation for important information on Linklaters LLP's regulatory position.

I. Introduction

1 Overview

1.1 We have acted as English legal advisers to the Futures Industry Association (“**FIA**”) and the International Swaps and Derivatives Association, Inc. (“**ISDA**”) in connection with this Memorandum.

1.2 In this Memorandum, we address (i) the recognition under English law of (a) New York law as the governing law of the Clearing Agreement and the Agent-Trust arising under the Clearing Agreement and (b) U.S. Federal law as the governing law of certain arrangements relating to Customer Property arising under the Clearing Agreement and (ii) the mandatory principles of English law that may affect the positions reached under New York law or U.S. Federal law in respect of the operation of the Clearing Agreement, the Agent-Trust and those arrangements.

1.3 The analysis that follows is split into four parts:

- (i) Section I sets out the scope of this Memorandum and the assumptions to which it is subject;
- (ii) Section II sets out our analysis of the U.S. FCM clearing model under English law by reference to the S&C Memorandum and the summary of the U.S. FCM clearing model provided by the FIA and ISDA set out in Annex 1 of this Memorandum (the “**Summary Annex**”);
- (iii) Section III sets out the questions that we have been asked to address in the instruction letter sent by FIA and ISDA (the “**Instructions**”, as set out in Annex 2 of this Memorandum), followed by our responses (which are based on the analysis and conclusions in Section II); and
- (iv) Section IV sets out the qualifications to which this Memorandum is subject.

2 English law

2.1 This Memorandum is limited to, and shall only be construed in accordance with, English law as applied by the English courts and in effect on the date of this Memorandum. Accordingly, this Memorandum does not address the laws of any jurisdiction other than England, and does not take into account any impact that the laws (including any insolvency or bankruptcy laws) of any jurisdiction other than England may have on the statements made in this Memorandum even if, as a result of the application of English law provisions on the conflict of laws, the laws of any such other jurisdiction may apply.

2.2 In this Memorandum, a reference to “English law” is a reference to the law of England and Wales and, unless the context indicates otherwise, a reference to “England” is a reference to the legal jurisdiction of England and Wales.

2.3 We do not undertake to update this Memorandum, including in the event of a change in law or practice.

3 Interpretation

3.1 In this Memorandum:

“**Account Class**” has the meaning given to the term “account class” in the Summary Annex;

“**Agent-Trust**” means the capacity in which an FCM holds the Customer Transactions for the benefit of the Customer as a result of its agency relationship with the Customer, as described in the S&C Memorandum and as summarised in the Summary Annex;

“**Agent-Trust Beneficial Interest**” means a Customer’s beneficial interest in the Agent-Trust Property;

“**Agent-Trust Property**” means the Customer Transactions held by the FCM on the terms of the Agent-Trust;

“**Bank Holding Company**” means a company registered in England under the Companies Act that is the parent undertaking of a Bank, a Building Society or an Investment Firm. For the purposes of this definition, “**Bank**” has the meaning given to it in section 2 of the Banking Act; “**Building Society**” has the meaning given to it in section 119 of the Building Societies Act 1986; and “**Investment Firm**” has the meaning given to it in section 258A of the Banking Act;

“**Banking Act**” means the Banking Act 2009 (as amended);

“**Banking Group Company**” has the meaning given to it in section 81D of the Banking Act;

“**Cash Arrangement**” has the meaning given to it in paragraph 1.4.2(iii) of Section II of this Memorandum;

“**Cash Entitlement**” has the meaning given to it in paragraph 1.4.2(iv) of Section II of this Memorandum;

“**Chargeable Costs**” has the meaning given to the term “chargeable costs” in the Summary Annex;

“**Charged Assets**” means the assets over which the Security Interest is expressed to be created in paragraph 1.37 of the Summary Annex;

“**Charity**” means a charity registered in England within the meaning of section 1 of the Charities Act 2011 (as amended) and established as a company under the Companies Act;

“**Cleared Swaps**” has the meaning given to the term “cleared swaps” in the Summary Annex;

“**Clearing Agreement**” means the documentation entered into between a Customer and the FCM that generally consists of:

- (i) (A) a customer account agreement governed by the law of the State of New York (a “**Base Account Agreement**”), if the Customer is trading only Futures, or (B) a Base Account Agreement with a cleared derivatives addendum, if the Customer is trading only Cleared Swaps or both Futures and Cleared Swaps; and

- (ii) one or more other documents relating to the terms of the relationship between the FCM and the Customer in relation to Customer Transactions each governed by the law of the State of New York,

in each case including any DCO rules (or clearing agreement between the FCM and its Foreign Futures Broker) that it is subject to;

“Companies Act” means the Companies Act 2006 (as amended) and, in relation to an entity established or registered under the Companies Act, includes its predecessors;

“Contractual Foreign Law Exceptions” has the meaning given to it in paragraph 2.1.2 of Section II of this Memorandum;

“Convention” has the meaning given to it in paragraph 3.1.1(i) of Section II of this Memorandum;

“Customer” means a customer of the FCM which has entered into a Clearing Agreement with the FCM and is an entity type that is within the scope of this Memorandum, as set out in paragraph 4 of this Section I;

“Customer Account” has the meaning given to the term “customer account” in the Summary Annex;

“Customer Funds” has the meaning given to the term “customer funds” in the Summary Annex;

“Customer Property Rules” has the meaning given to it in the Summary Annex;

“Customer Transaction” means, in respect of a Customer, a Future and/or a Cleared Swap, entered into by the FCM on behalf of such Customer pursuant to a Clearing Agreement;

“DCO” means one or more derivatives clearing organisations registered with the U.S. Commodity Futures Trading Commission (the **“CFTC”**) pursuant to the U.S. Commodity Exchange Act (the **“CEA”**), each of which acts as a central counterparty for exchange-traded futures and options on futures transactions and/or swaps transactions (as defined in the CEA and the CFTC regulations thereunder), which may initially be effected on an exchange, by means of another execution facility or over the counter;

“Determination of Account” has the meaning given to it the Summary Annex;

“English Company” has the meaning given to it in paragraph 4.1 of this Section I;

“Excluded Company” means a company that is (i) established under statute (other than the Companies Act), (ii) established by royal charter granted by the Crown, (iii) an Insurer, (iv) a Charity, (v) a Banking Group Company or a Bank Holding Company, (vi) a water and sewage undertaker under the Water Industry Act 1991, (vii) a qualifying water supply licensee within the meaning of section 23(6) of the Water Industry Act 1991 or a qualifying sewerage licensee within the meaning of section 23(8) of the Water Industry Act 1991, (viii) a licensed infrastructure provider within the meaning of the Water Industry (Specified Infrastructure Projects) (English Undertakers) Regulations 2013, (ix) a protected railway company under the Railways Act 1993 (as extended by the Channel Tunnel Rail Link Act 1996), (x) an air traffic services company under the Transport Act 2000, (xi) a public-private partnership company under the Greater London Authority Act 1999 or (xii) an underwriting member of Lloyd’s of London;

“FC Regulations” means the Financial Collateral Arrangements (No. 2) Regulations 2003 (as amended);

“FCM” means a U.S. registered futures commission merchant;

“Foreign Futures” has the meaning given to the term “foreign futures” in the Summary Annex;

“Foreign Futures Broker” has the meaning given to the term “foreign futures broker” in the Summary Annex;

“FSMA” means the Financial Services and Markets Act 2000 (as amended);

“Futures” has the meaning given to the term “futures” in the Summary Annex;

“General Insolvency Principles” has the meaning given to it in paragraph 4.1.8 of Section II of this Memorandum;

“Insolvency Act” means the Insolvency Act 1986 (as amended);

“Insolvency Rules” means the Insolvency (England and Wales) Rules 2016 (as amended);

“Instructions” has the meaning given to it in paragraph 1.3(iii) of this Section I and is set out in Annex 2 of this Memorandum;

“Insurer” means a company registered in England under the Companies Act which has permission under Part 4A of FSMA to carry on the regulated activity of effecting and carrying out contracts of insurance as principal;

“Investment Bank Regulations” means the Investment Bank Special Administration Regulations 2011 (as amended);

“Liquidation” means either or both of a Position Liquidation and a Margin Liquidation;

“Margin Liquidation” has the meaning given to it in the Summary Annex;

“Net Liquidating Equity” has the meaning given to the term “net liquidating equity” in the Summary Annex;

“Offsetting Transaction” has the meaning given to the term “offsetting transaction” in the Summary Annex;

“Permitted Uses” has the meaning given to the term “permitted uses” in the Summary Annex;

“Position Liquidation” has the meaning given to it in the Summary Annex;

“Proprietary Uses” has the meaning given to it in paragraph 3.8.4(ii) of Section II of this Memorandum;

“Residual Interest” has the meaning given to the term “residual interest” in the Summary Annex;

“RT Act” has the meaning given to it in paragraph 3.1.1(i) of Section II of this Memorandum;

“Securities Arrangement” has the meaning given to it in paragraph 1.4.2(ii) of Section II of this Memorandum;

“Security Interest” means the security interest granted by the Customer to the FCM over:

- (i) the Customer's proprietary interests in the Charged Assets; and
- (ii) the contractual rights that the Customer has in respect of the Charged Assets;

"Segregated Account" has the meaning given to the term "segregated account" in the Summary Annex;

"Segregated Funds" has the meaning given to the term "segregated funds" in the Summary Annex;

"Segregated Funds Account" has the meaning given to the term "segregated funds account" in the Summary Annex;

"Separate Account Funds" has the meaning given to the term "separate account funds" in the Summary Annex;

"Statutory Arrangement" means the separate statutory arrangements (that, as described in paragraph 1.4.2 of Section II, may or may not constitute trusts as a matter of U.S. Federal or state law) established over all the Statutory Property held by the FCM for the benefit of its customers in each applicable Account Class (and to the extent of the Residual Interest, the FCM) as described in the S&C Memorandum and Summary Annex ("**Statutory Arrangement**" may refer, as the context requires, to any Statutory Arrangement relating to the FCM or all Statutory Arrangements relating to the FCM on a combined basis);

"Statutory Avoidance Provisions" has the meaning given to it in paragraph 4.1.10 of Section II of this Memorandum;

"Statutory Property" means the Segregated Funds and/or Separate Account Funds (as applicable) held by the FCM on the terms of the Statutory Arrangement(s);

"Summary Annex" has the meaning given to it in paragraph 1.3(ii) of this Section I;

"S&C Memorandum" has the meaning given to it in paragraph 5.1 of this Section I;

"Transaction" means any of the following transactions entered into pursuant to a Clearing Agreement: Customer Transactions, Offsetting Transactions, risk-reducing transactions, hedging transactions and any transaction entered into in order to effect a Position Liquidation (if any);¹

"Trust Foreign Law Exceptions" has the meaning given to it in paragraph 3.4.2 of Section II of this Memorandum;

"Trust Property" means either or both of the Agent-Trust Property or the Statutory Property, as applicable;

"UCC" means the Uniform Commercial Code in effect in the State of New York;

"UK Rome I Regulation" means Regulation (EC) No 593/2008 on the law applicable to contractual obligations as it forms part of domestic law;

¹ Further details in respect of the operation of the liquidation mechanics under the Clearing Agreement are set out in the Summary Annex.

"U.S. Trust" has the meaning given to it in paragraph 1.4.2(i) of Section II of this Memorandum;

"U.S. Trust Beneficial Interest" means a Customer's beneficial interest in U.S. Trust Property;

"U.S. Trust Property" means the Statutory Property when it is held under a Statutory Arrangement that is a U.S. Trust;

"U.S. Clearing Model" has the meaning given to it in paragraph 5.1 of this Section I; and

"US Futures" has the meaning given to the term "US futures" in the Summary Annex.

3.2 In this Memorandum, references to the commencement of insolvency proceedings refer to: in the case of a voluntary winding-up, the passing of the members' resolution; in the case of a compulsory winding-up, the making of an order for its winding-up; in the case of an administration (other than a special administration (bank insolvency) and a special administration (bank administration) referred to below), the making of an order for its administration or the filing of the relevant notice with the Court, as the case may be; in the case of a bank insolvency, the date as of which a bank insolvency order is treated as having taken effect in accordance with section 98 of the Banking Act; in the case of a bank administration, the making of a bank administration order in respect of such entity; in the case of a special administration, the making of a special administration order in respect of such entity; in the case of a special administration (bank insolvency), the date as of which a special administration (bank insolvency) order is treated as having taken effect in accordance with paragraph 6 of Schedule 1 of the Investment Bank Regulations; and in the case of a special administration (bank administration), the making of a special administration (bank administration) order in respect of such entity.

3.3 In this Memorandum, references to an "Agent-Trust" or a "Statutory Arrangement" (and any associated provisions or concepts) refer to such concepts as set out and explained in the Summary Annex and other capitalised terms used but not defined in this Memorandum have the meanings given to them in the Summary Annex.

4 Scope of Customer types covered by this Memorandum

4.1 In this Memorandum we consider the issues that you have asked us to address only in respect of a company, if registered as a company in England under the Companies Act, excluding Excluded Companies (an **"English Company"**), and including, without limitation:

- (i) a Bank/Credit Institution, if established as an English Company, having its head office in England and permitted under Part 4A of FSMA to carry on the regulated activity of accepting deposits or to issue electronic money, as the case may be, other than an English Company which also has permission under Part 4A of FSMA to effect or carry out contracts of insurance as principal; and
- (ii) an Investment Firm/Broker Dealer, if established as an English Company and which is an "investment firm" within the meaning of paragraph 1A of Article 2 of Regulation 600/2014/EU, as it forms part of domestic law that provides services involving the holding of funds or securities for third parties.

4.2 We do not consider any other type of entity.

5 Scope of material reviewed

5.1 For the purposes of this Memorandum, we have read the memorandum prepared by Sullivan & Cromwell LLP entitled “Memorandum to the Futures Industry Association and the International Swaps and Derivatives Association, Inc. Regarding Futures and Options Transactions, Cleared Swaps and Foreign Futures Transactions Executed and Carried by Futures Commission Merchants for Their Customers” dated 17 November 2021 (the “**S&C Memorandum**”) and the supplementary summary of the U.S. clearing model set out in the Summary Annex (the “**U.S. Clearing Model**”) and assume the following:

- (i) the characterisation and legal effect of the relationships between an FCM, a Customer and a DCO (or Foreign Futures Broker) (including the rights and obligations of such parties under the Clearing Agreement) under U.S. Federal law and the law of the State of New York, as applicable, are as set out in the Summary Annex;
- (ii) the liquidation process (including the methods by which an FCM may affect a liquidation) following a Customer default under the terms of the Clearing Agreement and its legal effect under the law of the State of New York are as set out in the Summary Annex; and
- (iii) the security interest granted by the Customer to the FCM is in the form and over the types of assets set out in the Summary Annex.

5.2 We have not repeated the provisions of the Summary Annex in this Memorandum and the Summary Annex should be read in conjunction with this Memorandum.

5.3 For the purposes of this Memorandum, we have only relied on explanations of the terms of certain underlying documents, as well as the summary of the U.S. Clearing Model set out in the Summary Annex, the S&C Memorandum and the Instructions and we have not reviewed any other documents. In certain parts of this Memorandum, we have been asked to assume certain matters that are not apparent from the Summary Annex, the S&C Memorandum or the Instructions. Where this is the case, we have noted this in a footnote and the assumptions below. We rely on the contents of the Summary Annex, the S&C Memorandum and the Instructions without any further checks for the purposes of providing this Memorandum. Any references to “our understanding” or “we understand” in this Memorandum should be construed accordingly.

5.4 Our analysis is limited to the issues specifically addressed in this Memorandum.

6 Assumptions

Our analysis is subject to the assumptions contained within your Instructions (set out in Annex 2), the scope described in paragraph 5 of this Section I and the following additional assumptions:

6.1 The Clearing Agreement, applicable DCO rules (or the clearing agreement between the FCM and its Foreign Futures Broker) and the Transactions entered into thereunder constitute legal, valid, binding and enforceable obligations as regards the relevant DCO (or Foreign Futures Broker), FCM and the Customer who are party to them under New York law (or the law governing the clearing agreement between the FCM and its Foreign Futures Broker).

- 6.2** The applicable DCO rules (or the clearing agreement between the FCM and its Foreign Futures Broker) permit the FCM to effect a Position Liquidation and a Margin Liquidation and to enter into Offsetting Transactions, risk-reducing transactions, hedging transactions or any other transaction in order to effect a Position Liquidation (if any) following a Customer default, as set out in the Summary Annex.
- 6.3** Each of the FCM and the Customer has obtained all licences, approvals, authorisations and consents under all applicable laws which may be necessary in connection with the Clearing Agreement and any Transaction or arrangement entered into thereunder and is in compliance with all applicable laws in connection with the Clearing Agreement and any Transaction or arrangement entered into thereunder.
- 6.4** The Clearing Agreement and any Transactions or arrangements entered into thereunder (including the transfer of Customer Funds by the Customer to the FCM) were entered into prior to the commencement of any insolvency proceedings in relation to the relevant DCO (or Foreign Futures Broker), FCM or Customer and prior to any such party having notice that any insolvency-related events had occurred in relation to the other and not at a time that the Customer was unable to pay its debts within the meaning of section 123 of the Insolvency Act or became unable to pay its debts in consequence of entering into such arrangements, except in relation to the Customer at the time of the DCO (or Foreign Futures Broker) and the FCM entering into an Offsetting Transaction, risk-reducing transaction, hedging transaction and/or any transaction entered into in order to effect a Position Liquidation (if any) where the relevant analysis² assumes that such transactions are entered into after the commencement of insolvency proceedings with respect to the Customer.
- 6.5** The Clearing Agreement and all Transactions and arrangements thereunder have been or will be entered into for *bona fide* commercial reasons, on arm's length commercial terms by the parties and the Clearing Agreement correctly reflects the terms agreed between the parties. In addition, we assume that the Clearing Agreement only documents the arrangements described in the S&C Memorandum (and nothing else), does not require grossly exorbitant payments, does not otherwise grossly contravene ordinary principles of fair dealing and does not include any provision that would adversely affect the conclusions in this Memorandum.
- 6.6** There are no dealings between the parties that affect the operation or interpretation of any provision of the U.S. Clearing Model, the Clearing Agreement, the applicable DCO rules (or the clearing agreement between the FCM and its Foreign Futures Broker), any Transaction or arrangement entered into thereunder or any assumptions in this Memorandum. No agreement or Transaction entered into between the relevant DCO (or Foreign Futures Broker), the FCM and/or the Customer, or any other party, amends, varies, waives or otherwise affects in any respect the U.S. Clearing Model, the validity of the Clearing Agreement or the ability of (or requirement for) either party to comply with its obligations under it in such a way that would affect the conclusions reached in this Memorandum.
- 6.7** All applicable provisions of the FSMA and any applicable secondary legislation made under it have been or will be complied with in respect of anything done by the FCM, the Customer and/or

² See paragraph 4 of Section II of this Memorandum.

the relevant DCO (or Foreign Futures Broker) in relation to the applicable Clearing Agreement and any Transaction or arrangements entered into in connection with the Clearing Agreement.

- 6.8** Each Customer Transaction, Offsetting Transaction, risk-reducing transaction, hedging transaction and/or any transaction entered into in order to effect a Position Liquidation (if any) will be in accordance with the Clearing Agreement and the applicable DCO rules (or the clearing agreement between the FCM and its Foreign Futures Broker) and none of the provisions of any Transactions will affect the conclusions set out in this Memorandum.
- 6.9** In respect of the Agent-Trust, Statutory Arrangement(s) and the Security Interest, no security, trust, right of set-off or other proprietary interest or claims have been granted or exist over or in respect of the assets that form the subject of such trust or security arrangement in favour of anyone other than, in the case of the Security Interest, the FCM.
- 6.10** The FCM maintains up-to-date and accurate book-entry records in respect of all Customer Transactions, Customer Accounts and Statutory Property held by the FCM.
- 6.11** The securities comprising the Charged Assets are assets that constitute “financial instruments” for the purposes of the FC Regulations.
- 6.12** Any cash held by the FCM (including any cash transferred by the Customer to the FCM or received by the FCM from a DCO (or Foreign Futures Broker)) is not subject to the Financial Conduct Authority’s client asset and client money rules and will be credited to an account (as opposed to being in the form of physical notes and coins).
- 6.13** Customer Transactions and Statutory Property do not form part of the FCM’s general estate on insolvency.
- 6.14** In conducting a Liquidation, the FCM will only withdraw amounts from the Statutory Property for Permitted Uses or Proprietary Uses.
- 6.15** Under U.S. Federal law, a separate Statutory Arrangement is established over the Statutory Property held by the FCM for the benefit of its customers for each Account Class. As a result, there could be three separate Statutory Arrangements arising under the Clearing Agreement.
- 6.16** Although the Security Interest may also secure liabilities of the Customer to the FCM other than under the Clearing Agreement,³ such other liabilities will not be included in the liquidation process after the default of a Customer.
- 6.17** The U.S. security arrangement meets the requirements under the UCC in order to, and does, create a specific security interest in the Customer’s rights and interest in its Charged Assets.
- 6.18** New York law and U.S. Federal law provide that an Agent-Trust Beneficial Interest and a U.S. Trust Beneficial Interest are not interests in any specific asset that constitutes the Agent-Trust Property or the U.S. Trust Property (as applicable) but rather are:
- (i) in respect of an Agent-Trust Beneficial Interest, a beneficial interest in the Agent-Trust Property as a whole or multiple *pro rata* beneficial interests in only subsets of the Agent-

³ See paragraph 1.38 of the Summary Annex.

Trust Property reflecting the Customer Transactions cleared by the FCM for that Customer; and

- (ii) in respect of a U.S. Trust Beneficial Interest, a beneficial interest in the U.S. Trust Property as a whole or multiple beneficial interests in sub-pools or classes of assets included in the U.S. Trust Property.⁴

⁴ See paragraph 1.11 of the Summary Annex and paragraphs 1.4.1 and 1.4.2(i) of Section II of this Memorandum.

II. English law analysis of the U.S. Clearing Model

1 Introduction

1.1 In this Section II we set out our analysis with respect to:

- (i) the recognition under English law of:
 - (a) New York law as the governing law of the Clearing Agreement and the Agent-Trust arising under the Clearing Agreement; and
 - (b) if the Statutory Arrangement(s) are recognised as a valid trust under U.S. Federal or state law, U.S. Federal law as the governing law of the Statutory Arrangement(s) arising under the Clearing Agreement;
- (ii) if the Statutory Arrangement(s) are recognised as a valid trust under U.S. Federal or state law, the mandatory principles of English law that may affect the positions reached under New York or U.S. Federal law in respect of the operation of the Clearing Agreement, the Agent-Trust and the Statutory Arrangement(s); and
- (iii) if the Statutory Arrangement(s) are not recognised as a valid trust under U.S. Federal or state law, the mandatory principles of English law that may affect the effectiveness of the Security Interest over the Statutory Arrangement(s).

1.2 Different conflict of laws principles will apply depending on whether a particular provision of the Clearing Agreement (and, accordingly, the U.S. Clearing Model) is characterised as:

- (i) a contractual provision; or
- (ii) a term of a trust.⁵

1.3 We examine each of the three elements of the U.S. Clearing Model in turn:

- (i) the contractual provisions relating to aspects of the FCM/Customer relationship;
- (ii) the Agent-Trust and, subject to the Statutory Arrangement(s) being recognised as a valid trust under U.S. Federal or state law, the Statutory Arrangement(s) (including where more than one Statutory Arrangement is established); and
- (iii) the Security Interest.

1.4 Our analysis in relation to the Agent-Trust and Statutory Arrangement(s) depends on the nature of the Customer's interest in the Agent-Trust Property and Statutory Property (as applicable):

- 1.4.1** With respect to the Agent-Trust, we understand that, although it is clear that the Customer does not have a beneficial interest in individual or specific Customer Transactions cleared for it by the FCM, it is unclear whether the Customer has a beneficial interest in the Agent-Trust Property as a whole (i.e. the Covered Customer's

⁵ To the extent that a particular provision of the Clearing Agreement gives rise to a Statutory Arrangement that is not recognised as a valid trust under U.S. Federal or state law, the conflicts of laws analysis in this Memorandum is limited to considering the circumstances in which English law would consider applicable US law to be the applicable law(s) to determine the effect of the creation of a security interest in the Customer's interest in the Charged Assets.

beneficial interest in the Agent-Trust Property is an interest in a proportionate share of all assets constituting the Agent-Trust Property held by the FCM for all its Customers in an Account Class), or the Customer has multiple *pro rata* beneficial interests in only subsets of the Agent-Trust Property reflecting the Customer Transactions cleared by the FCM for that Customer (and its other customers with open positions in such Transactions). As relatively little turns on this in the remainder of this Memorandum, we make limited references to this distinction going forward.

1.4.2 With respect to the Statutory Arrangement(s), whilst we understand that it is most likely that the Statutory Arrangement(s) will be recognised as a valid trust under U.S. Federal or state law, we have been asked to consider each of the below types of Statutory Arrangement, including some in respect of which the Statutory Arrangement(s) will not be recognised as a valid trust under U.S. Federal or state law:⁶

- (i) There is a Statutory Arrangement that is recognised as a valid trust under U.S. Federal or state law. The Customer has no direct property interest in specific securities and/or a specific amount of cash comprising the Statutory Property, but, instead, the Customer has either an undivided interest in the entire pool of securities and/or total amount of cash (as applicable) or multiple undivided interests in sub-pools or classes of assets, in each case held on trust *pro rata* to its entitlement. We refer to such a Statutory Arrangement as a “**U.S. Trust**”.⁷ The Customer may also have a “security entitlement” under Article 8 of the UCC (or

⁶ There is relatively little guidance in the S&C Memorandum and the Summary Annex on the nature of Statutory Arrangements that may not be recognised as a valid trust under U.S. Federal or state law. For the purposes of this Memorandum, we have been asked to consider three different types of Statutory Arrangement that may not be recognised as a valid trust under U.S. Federal or state law, as described in sub-paragraphs (ii) to (iv) of this paragraph 1.4.2.

⁷ On account of the uncertainty as to whether or not the Customer's interest in Statutory Property is in the nature of a single interest in the Statutory Property as a whole or comprises multiple interests in sub-pools or classes of assets included in the Statutory Property, this Memorandum has been written on the understanding that the Customer's interest in Statutory Property may, at any time, comprise either type of arrangement.

This approach is, in our view, supported by the discussion in paragraphs 1.32 to 1.36 of the Summary Annex, which highlights different judicial approaches taken prior to the enactment of Subchapter IV to a customer's ability to assert proprietary rights over Customer Property in an FCM's insolvency, which is the scenario in which the ability to assert a proprietary right is most relevant. We understand that Subchapter IV (which is primary legislation in the US) and Part 190 (which are rules promulgated by the CFTC under authority conferred on it by Congress) effectively provide for the *pro rata* distribution of Customer Property upon the bankruptcy of an FCM by reference to each Customer's Net Liquidating Equity on an Account Class by Account Class basis (see paragraph 1.33 of the Summary Annex for more detail). In this respect, we note that, following the bankruptcy of an FCM, a Customer is entitled to share rateably in all Customer Property held by the FCM, but also that a Customer that is identified as having a claim to specifically identifiable property is entitled to have its *pro rata* claim first satisfied out of that Customer's specifically identifiable property (see paragraphs 1.34.1 to 1.34.3 of the Summary Annex). We understand that there is no definitive legal authority in the U.S. as to whether a Customer's claim in respect of its specifically identifiable property is a proprietary one (albeit limited to the value of its Net Liquidating Equity and so not conferring a proprietary entitlement to specifically identifiable property in excess of the value of its Net Liquidating Equity (and we note that a Customer that wishes to recover its specifically identifiable property in excess of the value of its Net Liquidating Equity must pay that excess value into the bankruptcy estate - see paragraph 1.34.1 of the Summary Annex)) or a procedural one, whereby the FCM's bankruptcy trustee is mandated to distribute the Customer Property held by the FCM in a particular manner without affording the Customer a proprietary interest in its specifically identifiable property. We also understand that, as Subchapter IV and Part 190 are derived from US bankruptcy legislation, they may not affect the characterisation of a Customer's proprietary interest before an FCM's bankruptcy, as the U.S. bankruptcy legislation only governs following the bankruptcy of the FCM and so is not dispositive of the legal relationship created by the Clearing Agreement before an FCM's bankruptcy. “Subchapter IV”, “Part 190” and “specifically identifiable property” are not defined in the Summary Annex, however, the context of their use makes their meaning clear. For purposes of this footnote, references to those terms are to those terms as they are used in the Summary Annex.

similar rights under U.S. Federal or state law) in the securities under such Statutory Arrangement.

- (ii) The Customer has a “security entitlement” under Article 8 of the UCC (or similar rights under U.S. Federal or state law) in the securities transferred by the Customer to the FCM but the Statutory Arrangement relating to such securities is not recognised as a valid trust under U.S. Federal or state law. We refer to such a Statutory Arrangement as a “**Securities Arrangement**”.
- (iii) With respect to cash transferred by the Customer to the FCM where (a) the Statutory Arrangement relating to such cash is not recognised as a valid trust under U.S. Federal or state law, and (b) the Customer does not have a direct interest in the underlying bank account in which such cash is deposited. We refer to such a Statutory Arrangement as a “**Cash Arrangement**”.
- (iv) With respect to cash transferred by the Customer to the FCM where (a) the Statutory Arrangement relating to such cash is not recognised as a valid trust under U.S. Federal or state law, and (b) the Customer does have a direct interest in the underlying bank account in which such cash is deposited. We refer to such a Statutory Arrangement as a “**Cash Entitlement**”.

1.4.3 We note that the Customer's entitlement to Statutory Property is determined by reference to its "Net Liquidating Equity" (see paragraphs 1.6, 1.7 and 1.28 to 1.31 of the Summary Annex and footnote 7) and that when an FCM withdraws Statutory Property from its segregated or separate accounts for "Permitted Uses" (see paragraph 3.8.4 of this Section II), including repledges to DCOs or foreign futures brokers, or to make permitted investments (see footnote 46 of the Summary Annex), it is entitled to withdraw Statutory Property in respect of the Account Class (as opposed to Statutory Property corresponding to a particular Customer) (see paragraph 1.36 of the Summary Annex). Thus, a Customer may not have a contractual or proprietary entitlement to all its Customer Funds credited to its customer account (as its entitlement is limited to its Net Liquidating Equity) and, in addition to assets delivered by Customers and the FCM (by contribution to its Residual Interest and the investment of Customer Funds in permitted investments), Statutory Property (which may comprise different assets to the assets originally delivered by Customers) may be delivered into segregation by DCOs or Foreign Futures Brokers.⁸ Therefore, whilst an FCM is required to segregate Customer Funds (see paragraph 1.12 of the Summary Annex), there may very well be an imbalance between the Customer Funds of each Customer as recorded by the FCM in

⁸ For example, if a Customer A deposits Customer Funds comprising 500 units of a security having ISIN XYZ, then Customer A will have Customer Funds credited to Customer A's customer account reflecting those securities. If the FCM then applies 200 of those securities in Permitted Uses for a different Customer of the same Account Class that has not posted those securities, which we understand is permissible (and assuming that no other Customer has posted those securities with that ISIN), then Customer A will have a Customer Funds balance that represents a contractual entitlement to that balance, but because there will only remain 300 securities, Customer A cannot have a proprietary interest in 500 securities because they are not held by or to the order of the FCM. If, on the other hand, the FCM does not apply those securities in Permitted Uses, but Customer A has unrealised losses on its Customer Transactions, that will result in Customer A's Net Liquidating Equity being less than the value of its Customer Funds. In such a case, we understand that Customer A will have neither a contractual claim for the full value of its Customer Funds nor a proprietary claim to the full value of its Customer Funds, as, in each case, the claim would be limited to its Net Liquidating Equity.

its books and records and the Statutory Property held in segregation. Assuming that the FCM complies with the segregation requirements of the Customer Property Rules (including by maintaining an adequate Residual Interest and segregating permitted investments of Customer Funds), whilst there will always be Statutory Property of sufficient value to meet the requirement to segregate Customer Funds, there will not be a direct correlation between the Statutory Property so held and the Customer Funds so recorded due to the imbalances referred to above.

- 1.4.4 Following on from paragraph 1.4.3 of this Section II, we also note that the Charged Assets (even excluding for the purpose of this paragraph 1.4.4 the Customer Transactions, which do not comprise Statutory Property but, rather, comprise the Agent-Trust Property) described in paragraph 1.37 of the Summary Annex may be different to the Statutory Property, in each case in respect of all Customers of the same Account Class. Specifically, we understand that the Security Interest is not expressed to be granted over the Customer's rights and interest in (or entitlement to) the Statutory Property but, rather, the Customer's rights and interest in the Charged Assets (which are generally limited to assets delivered to the FCM by the Customer and certain proceeds of such assets, all as recorded in the Customer Account, such that assets not recorded in the Customer Account are unlikely to be Charged Assets for the relevant Customer, even if they comprise Statutory Property). In connection with this, we understand that, to the extent that the Statutory Arrangement comprises a U.S. Trust, the Security Interest will not extend to the Customer's U.S. Trust Beneficial Interest, as the Statutory Property may include assets that are not Charged Assets (for example, assets deposited into segregation by the FCM as its residual interest) whilst the Security Interest will be limited to the Customer's rights in respect of the Charged Assets. Likewise, if the Statutory Arrangement does not comprise a U.S. Trust, the Security Interest will still be limited to the Customer's rights and interest in the Charged Assets, which is likely to be different from the Customer's interest in the Statutory Property. A consideration of the nature of the Customer's rights and interest in the Charged Assets is outside the scope of this Memorandum. We have assumed in paragraph 6.17 of Section I that the Clearing Agreement is effective in order to, and does, create a specific security interest in the Customer's rights and interest in its Charged Assets in favour of the FCM as a matter of New York law.

2 Contractual provisions of the U.S Clearing Model under English law

2.1 Conflict of laws analysis

- 2.1.1 So far as English law is concerned, the applicable law of contractual obligations in civil and commercial matters is governed by the UK Rome I Regulation.⁹ Under the UK Rome I Regulation, subject to certain exceptions (which are discussed below), the governing law is that chosen by the parties. The choice must be express or clearly demonstrated

⁹ The UK Rome I Regulation applies to contracts entered into on and after 17 December 2009. We do not consider contracts entered into before this date.

by the terms of the contract or the circumstances of the case.¹⁰ The law chosen shall be applied whether or not it is the law of the United Kingdom or part of the United Kingdom.¹¹

2.1.2 As a result of the UK Rome I Regulation, therefore, if proceedings were brought before an English court in respect of the Clearing Agreement and New York law is pleaded and proved as a fact in accordance with English procedural and evidential rules, the choice of New York law as the governing law of the Clearing Agreement would be recognised by the English court and, accordingly, New York law would govern the validity, binding effect and enforceability of the Clearing Agreement. This general principle is subject to the following exceptions (the “**Contractual Foreign Law Exceptions**”):

- (i) effect may be given to the overriding mandatory provisions of the law of the country where the obligations arising out of a contract have to be or have been performed, insofar as those provisions render the performance of the contract unlawful. In such circumstances, the relevant obligations may not be enforceable;
- (ii) where all the other elements relevant to the Clearing Agreement at the time of the choice of governing law are located in a country other than the U.S., it is possible that the choice of New York law will not prejudice the application of provisions of the law of that other country which cannot be derogated from by agreement;
- (iii) where all other elements relevant to the Clearing Agreement at the time of the choice of the governing law are located in the UK or one or more EU member states and the governing law chosen to apply is not that of a relevant state (as defined by Article 1(4) of the UK Rome I Regulation), it is possible that the choice of New York law will not prejudice the application by the English courts of any provisions of assimilated EU law which cannot be derogated from by agreement;
- (iv) the English courts may have regard to the law of the country in which performance takes place in relation to the manner of performance and the steps to be taken in the event of defective performance;
- (v) the English courts may not be restricted from applying overriding mandatory provisions of English law; and
- (vi) if there is a provision of New York law that is manifestly incompatible with English public policy, it is possible that the English courts may not apply it.

2.2 Application of the Contractual Foreign Law Exceptions to the contractual provisions

It therefore falls to be considered whether the contractual provisions of the Clearing Agreement come within the scope of the Contractual Foreign Law Exceptions:

¹⁰ Article 3(1) of the UK Rome I Regulation.

¹¹ Article 2 of the UK Rome I Regulation.

- 2.2.1** The Contractual Foreign Law Exceptions described in paragraphs 2.1.2(i), (ii), (iii) and (iv) above are questions of fact. In respect of paragraphs 2.1.2(i) and (iv), we assume that the performance of the obligations under the Clearing Agreement will occur in the U.S. or in England and that there are no overriding provisions of U.S. Federal or state laws that would make the performance of the contract unlawful. Relevant overriding provisions of English law are discussed further below. We also assume, given the location of the FCM in the U.S. that the Contractual Foreign Law Exceptions referred to in paragraphs 2.1.2(ii) and (iii) will not apply.
- 2.2.2** Accordingly, it is the Contractual Foreign Law Exceptions described in paragraphs 2.1.2(v) and (vi) above – that mandatory provisions of English law may override a provision of New York law and that English courts may not apply a provision of New York law that is manifestly incompatible with English public policy – that require English law analysis.
- 2.2.3** In respect of the Contractual Foreign Law Exception described in paragraph 2.1.2(vi) above, we do not believe that the contractual provisions of the Clearing Agreement described in the S&C Memorandum and the Summary Annex would be manifestly incompatible with English public policy.
- 2.2.4** In respect of the Contractual Foreign Law Exception described in paragraph 2.1.2(v) above, it is necessary to consider whether application of all or any of the contractual provisions constitute a penalty as a matter of English law.
- 2.2.5** In *Cavendish Square Holding BV v Talal El Makdessi*,¹² the court stated that the test for determining whether or not a provision constitutes a penalty is whether it is “*a secondary obligation which imposes a detriment on the contract-breaker out of all proportion to any legitimate interest of the innocent party in the enforcement of the primary obligation*”. There are therefore three elements to this test. The first is that a provision will only be a penalty if it is a secondary, rather than a primary, obligation. The second is that, even if a provision is a secondary obligation, it will only be a penalty if it bears no relation to the legitimate interests of the innocent party. The third is that, having regard to the identified legitimate interest, the secondary obligation must be exorbitant or unconscionable in amount or in its effect. In the case of a negotiated contract between properly advised parties of comparable bargaining power, there will be a strong initial presumption that the parties themselves are the best judges of what is legitimate in a provision dealing with the consequences of breach. In this regard, we do not believe that the contractual provisions of the Clearing Agreement described in the S&C Memorandum and the Summary Annex would constitute a penalty but would note that we have not reviewed any Clearing Agreement for the purpose of this Memorandum and draw your attention to paragraph 6.5 of Section I of this Memorandum.
- 2.2.6** Mandatory provisions of English law that apply following commencement of insolvency proceedings are considered in paragraph 4 of this Section II in respect of the Agent-Trust and a U.S. Trust.

¹² [2015] UKSC 67. Confirmed in *Houssein & Ors v London Credit Ltd & Anor* [2024] EWCA Civ 721.

Therefore, we consider that, subject to the discussion in paragraph 4 of this Section II, none of the Contractual Foreign Law Exceptions apply and so New York law would be recognised as the governing law of the contractual provisions.

3 Trust provisions of the U.S. Clearing Model under English law¹³

3.1 Validity of trusts under English law

3.1.1 Approach taken

The constitution of trusts and the relationship between settlors, trustees and beneficiaries are expressly excluded from the scope of the UK Rome I Regulation. When the English courts are asked to consider the validity of a trust, they must first determine the law chosen to govern its terms.

The English courts determine the governing law:

- (i) by applying the Recognition of Trusts Act 1987 (the “**RT Act**”) which (with some omissions and extensions) implements the Hague Convention on the Law Applicable to Trusts and on Their Recognition (the “**Convention**”) to those trusts which fall within its scope; and
- (ii) for trusts which are outside the scope of the RT Act, by applying the common law principles governing trust arrangements.

3.1.2 Trusts within the scope of the RT Act

A trust will be within the scope of the RT Act if it comes within the following definition of a “trust” set out in the Schedule to the RT Act:

“The legal relationship created—inter vivos or on death—by a person, the settlor, when assets have been placed under the control of a trustee for the benefit of a beneficiary or for a specified purpose.

A trust has the following characteristics—

- (a) *the assets constitute a separate fund and are not a part of the trustee’s own estate;*
- (b) *title to the trust assets stands in the name of the trustee or in the name of another person on behalf of the trustee;*
- (c) *the trustee has the power and the duty, in respect of which [it] is accountable, to manage, employ or dispose of the assets in accordance with the terms of the trust and the special duties imposed upon [it] by law.*

¹³ Our analysis in this paragraph 3 of Section II in respect of the Statutory Arrangement(s) is given in respect of a U.S. Trust only, as it is the only type of Statutory Arrangement that is recognised as a trust under U.S. Federal or state law (see paragraph 1.4.2 of this Section II).

The reservation by the settlor of certain rights and powers, and the fact that the trustee may [itself] have rights as a beneficiary, are not necessarily inconsistent with the existence of a trust.”¹⁴

The Convention was originally enacted to apply only to trusts as defined in the Convention if they are “created voluntarily and evidenced in writing”.¹⁵ Trusts arising by operation of statute are not included in its scope because they do not arise “voluntarily”.¹⁶ S.1(2) of the RT Act in the UK extends the scope of the Convention in the UK to trusts created by statute or under statutory powers, the only requirement being that the trust must arise under the law of some part of the UK.¹⁷ However, as a U.S. Trust does not arise under the laws of any part of the UK, such arrangement cannot derive the benefit of this extension.

Nevertheless, it is arguable that the parties enter into the Clearing Agreement voluntarily and it is as a result of this voluntary arrangement that a U.S. Trust is created. A U.S. Trust could also, therefore, be understood to be entered into voluntarily.¹⁸

3.1.3 Governing law of trusts within the scope of the RT Act

If a trust is within the scope of the RT Act, then the rules of the RT Act apply to determine its governing law.

The RT Act codifies a set of rules for identifying the governing law of a trust.¹⁹ The express or implied choice of the settlor takes priority and the settlor’s choice is unfettered. If there is no express or implied choice, the governing law is found by applying a series of tests designed to establish the law of the closest connection.

3.1.4 Governing law of trusts outside the scope of the RT Act

Not all trusts are within the scope of the RT Act. In the case of a trust not covered by the RT Act, the governing law must be established under English common law principles. This means that it must be pleaded and proved as a fact in accordance with English procedural and evidential rules that a law has been chosen to be the governing law of a trust arrangement or (in the case of a U.S. Trust) that the parties have voluntarily entered into arrangements that give rise to a trust governed by particular statutory provisions.

¹⁴ Article 2 in the Schedule to the RT Act.

¹⁵ Article 3 in the Schedule to the RT Act.

¹⁶ This point is made in the Explanatory Notes to the Convention at paragraph 49 (which states that “*in particular, the Convention is not applicable to trusts created by operation of law or by judicial decision*”). *Lewin on Trusts* (20th Edition), Paragraph 12-004 (citing in support *Piatek v Piatek* [2010] QSC 412 at [125] although the comment appears to be obiter and not have been fully argued) and *Dicey, Morris & Collins on the Conflict of Laws* (16th Edition), paragraph 29-006 also suggest that trusts arising by operation of statute are probably not included. The position where a statutory trust arises by entering into a contract is not considered in any of these sources.

¹⁷ This provision appears to be *ultra vires* the Convention, which in Article 20 (that underlies the enactment of s.1(2)) permits the scope of the Convention to be extended to judicial decisions only. We do not think it is necessary to consider this aspect further in this memorandum as the extension clearly does not apply in the context of a U.S. Trust which does not arise under English (or any other UK) law.

¹⁸ This can be contrasted with a trust arising “purely” as a result of statute, such as trusts created in cases of intestacy.

¹⁹ Articles 6 and 7 in the Schedule to the RT Act.

3.1.5 Scope of the chosen governing law where the RT Act applies

Article 8²⁰ of the Schedule to the RT Act deals with the governing effects of the chosen law. Of relevance here is that the law chosen governs the validity of the trust, its construction, its effects and the administration of the trust. It covers relationships between the trustee and the beneficiaries and the extent of all duties owed by the trustee to the beneficiaries, including the duty of care. This is subject to the qualification that the RT Act does not apply to the validity of acts by which assets are transferred to trustees and does not cover the rights and obligations of third parties to the trust with respect to the trust property.

Article 11 of the Schedule to the RT Act contains the provisions for recognition. The general scope of the Article is subject to Article 15 (*mandatory rules*), Article 16 (*overriding rules*) and Article 18 (*public policy*) of the Schedule all of which are described and considered more fully in paragraphs 3.4 and 3.5 of this Section II.

Article 11 provides that a trust created in accordance with the chosen law is to be recognised as a trust and such recognition implies, as a minimum, that trust property constitutes a separate fund, that the trustee may sue and be sued in its capacity as trustee and that the trustee may appear or act in this capacity before a notary or any person acting in an official capacity.

Article 11 goes on to provide that in so far as the law applicable to the trust requires or provides, amongst other things, such recognition shall imply in particular:

- (a) that personal creditors of the trustee shall not form part of the trustee's estate upon its insolvency or bankruptcy;
- (b) that the trust assets shall not form part of the trustee's estate upon its insolvency or bankruptcy; and
- (c) that the trust assets may be recovered when the trustee, in breach of trust, has mingled the trust assets with its own property or has alienated trust assets.

²⁰ "The law specified by Article 6 or 7 shall govern the validity of the trust, its construction, its effects and the administration of the trust. In particular that law shall govern—

(a) the appointment, resignation and removal of trustees, the capacity to act as a trustee, and the devolution of the office of trustee;

(b) the rights and duties of trustees among themselves;

(c) the right of trustees to delegate in whole or in part the discharge of their duties or the exercise of their powers;

(d) the power of trustees to administer or to dispose of trust assets, to create security interests in the trust assets, or to acquire new assets;

(e) the powers of investment of trustees;

(f) restrictions upon the duration of the trust, and upon the power to accumulate the income of the trust;

(g) the relationships between the trustees and the beneficiaries including the personal liability of the trustees to the beneficiaries;

(h) the variation or termination of the trust;

(i) the distribution of the trust assets;

(j) the duty of trustees to account for their administration."

However, the rights and obligations of any third party holder of the assets shall remain subject to the law determined by the choice of law rules of the forum.

The RT Act does not replace otherwise applicable law relating to trusts outside the scope of the RT Act or the consequences of recognition beyond those set out in the RT Act.

3.1.6 Scope of the chosen governing law where the RT Act does not apply

There is limited authority for the scope of the English common law principles relating to the determination of the validity of a trust outside the scope of the RT Act. If it has been pleaded and proved as a fact (in accordance with English procedural and evidential rules) that a law has been chosen to be the governing law of a trust arrangement (or that the parties have voluntarily entered into arrangements that give rise to a trust governed by particular statutory provisions), it is unclear whether the essential characterisation of such an arrangement as a trust must be determined in accordance with the chosen law or English law.

- (i) If as a matter of English law the governing law of the arrangement determines whether it should be characterised as a trust, English law will defer to such governing law, which will govern characterisation and validity of the trust.
- (ii) If, on the other hand, as a matter of English law it fell to the English courts to consider whether an arrangement governed by the laws of a different jurisdiction constitutes a trust (as a result of the governing law of the trust not being determinative of the characterisation), the English courts would look to determine what the essential and defining characteristics of a trust are and then ascertain whether the arrangement in question (governed, in the present case, by either New York law in respect of the Agent-Trust or U.S. Federal law in respect of a U.S. Trust) has these characteristics.

3.1.7 Characterisation of a trust under English law

We analyse in this section how a trust arrangement whose governing law is determined to be foreign law would be characterised under English common law, if it fell to the English courts to determine such a trust arrangement's characterisation (as a result of the governing law of the trust not being determinative of the characterisation).

There is no single definition of a trust under English law that has been widely adopted as definitive. Several definitions have been proposed, each containing various degrees of description of what constitutes a trust under English law. However, what can be described as the hallmark of a trust under English law is that a person in whom the property is vested is compelled in equity to hold the property for the benefit of another person or for a charitable, or other legally recognised, purpose. The effect and essence of the trust is to divide the incidents of ownership of the property between the trustee and the beneficiary. The legal ownership vests in the trustee but, when a person holds property as trustee, it is treated in equity as taking it subject to the beneficiary's equitable rights. Under English common law, the existence of this feature is generally sufficient for

the relationship to be defined as a trust.²¹ A consequence of an asset being held on trust under English law is that the asset does not fall into the general insolvency estate of the trustee but instead is held by the trustee for the beneficiaries of the trust. As a consequence, general creditors of an insolvent trustee will have no claim in the insolvency to the assets held on trust. This is also consistent with the RT Act definition of a trust referred to in paragraph 3.1.2 of this Section II, which requires that the assets held on trust constitute a separate fund and are not a part of the trustee's own estate.

It is clear from both the RT Act and English common law principles that the law that governs the validity of the trust (in this case, the chosen law) determines the nature of the interest of the beneficiary in the trust and the trust property.

3.1.8 Effect of the characterisation of a trust under English law

If the RT Act does not apply and an English court determines that the arrangement should be characterised as a trust (either based on the governing law of the arrangement or in accordance with English common law principles),²² the position summarised in paragraph 3.1.5 of this Section II as arising under the RT Act reflects broadly the position that would arise under English common law such that the chosen law of the trust will govern the validity of the trust, its construction, its effects and the administration of the trust.

3.2 Application of the RT Act or the common law to the Agent-Trust and a U.S. Trust

3.2.1 In the case of the Agent-Trust:

- (i) there are good arguments that the Agent-Trust falls within the definition of a "trust" under the RT Act as the Customer Transactions are placed under the control of the FCM²³ for the benefit of a Customer and the Agent-Trust is consistent with each of the three characteristics contained within the definition set out in paragraph 3.1.2 of this Section II;²⁴

²¹ *Snell's Equity* (34th Edition), Chapter 21-002.

²² See paragraphs 3.1.6 and 3.1.7 of this Section II.

²³ As the legal title-holder of the Customer Transactions, the FCM arguably has control of the Customer Transactions (which it holds for the benefit of the Customers). We note however, that unlike a classic trustee, in its capacity as "agent-trustee", the FCM holds legal title to the Customer Transactions "subject to the control of its principal" (see footnote 14 of the Summary Annex), which reflects the nature of the agency relationship between the parties. Although this may on the face of it appear to contradict the RT Act requirement, we think the better interpretation of this is that the FCM has control over the Customer Transactions but its rights as legal title-holder are fettered by the Customer's right to direct the FCM in respect of the Customer Transactions pursuant to the provisions of the Clearing Agreement and we note from paragraph 3.1.2 of this Section II that "[t]he reservation by the settlor of certain rights and powers ... are not necessarily inconsistent with the existence of a trust" (although this view is not free from doubt).

²⁴ The trustee's fiduciary obligations (owed as trustee, as opposed to fiduciary obligations owed in any other capacity) appear to be a core feature of an in-scope trust for the purposes of the Convention (see Paragraph 40 of the Explanatory Note to the Hague Convention). As the RT Act implements the Convention, English courts may decide to apply the same construction while analysing trust arrangements under the RT Act. We understand from the description of the Agent-Trust in the Summary Annex that the fiduciary obligations owed by the FCM to the Customer arises under the agency relationship rather than the trust relationship. Although this could weaken the argument in favour of the Agent-Trust being a type of RT Act trust, we think greater weight would be given to the fact that the three characteristics contained within the definition set out in paragraph 3.1.2 of this Section II appear to be met.

- (ii) the fact that there is no declaration of the trust in writing and the Customer retains some control over the Customer Transactions creates some uncertainty as to whether the RT Act would apply to such a trust;
- (iii) if the RT Act is applicable, it would provide that New York law would be recognised as the governing law of the Agent-Trust by an English court; and
- (iv) as there is some uncertainty that the Agent-Trust would fall within the scope of the RT Act, we also consider its recognition under English common law principles. If the English common law principles provide that English law would look to the law governing an arrangement to determine its characterisation, then such principles would provide that New York law is recognised as the governing law of the Agent-Trust by an English court and would also govern its characterisation. However, we set out in paragraph 3.3.1 of this Section II our analysis if the English common law principles provide that English law would determine the characterisation of the Agent-Trust instead.

3.2.2 In the case of a U.S. Trust:

- (i) subject to the assumption in paragraph 6.15 of Section I and footnote 36, a U.S. Trust clearly falls within the definition of a “trust” under the RT Act as the assets are similarly placed under the control of the FCM for the benefit of a Customer and a U.S. Trust is consistent with each of the three characteristics contained within the definition set out in paragraph 3.1.2 of this Section II;
- (ii) as noted in paragraph 3.1.2 above, it is not certain that trusts created by statute can be considered to have been created voluntarily (within the meaning of the RT Act), and therefore, although a U.S. Trust is arguably created as a result of the parties voluntarily entering into the Clearing Agreement, there is some uncertainty as to whether the RT Act would apply to such a trust;
- (iii) if the RT Act is applicable, it would provide that U.S. Federal law is recognised as the governing law of a U.S. Trust by an English court; and
- (iv) as it is not certain that a U.S. Trust would fall within the scope of the RT Act, we also consider its recognition under English common law principles. If the English common law principles provide that English law would look to the law governing an arrangement to determine its characterisation, then such principles would provide that U.S. Federal law is recognised as the governing law of a U.S. Trust by an English court and would also govern its characterisation.²⁵ However, we set out in paragraph 3.3.2 of this Section II our analysis if the English common law principles provide that English law would determine the characterisation of a U.S. Trust instead.

²⁵ Therefore, if U.S. Federal law recognised a U.S. Trust as a trust then such Statutory Arrangement would also be recognised as a valid trust under English law.

3.3 Application of the definition and features of a trust under English law to the Agent-Trust and a U.S. Trust

3.3.1 Applying the characteristics of a trust under English law discussed in paragraph 3.1.7 of this Section II to the Agent-Trust, the following observations can be made:

- (i) the FCM holds legal title to the Customer Transactions credited to a Customer Account;²⁶
- (ii) the Customer is the beneficial owner (i.e. the owner in equity) of the Customer Transactions credited to the omnibus customer positions account, being entitled to the benefit and subject to the burden of the Customer Transactions;²⁷
- (iii) Customer Transactions are identified by way of book-keeping records of the FCM as belonging to each Customer;²⁸
- (iv) Customer Transactions do not form part of the FCM's estate on insolvency;²⁹
- (v) after the default of a Customer (and in certain non-default circumstances set out in the Clearing Agreement as well), although the FCM may deal with Customer Transactions without regard to the directions of the Customer, the proceeds arising from the Customer Transactions immediately become part of the Segregated Funds or Separate Account Funds (as applicable) and the FCM must account to the Customer for its entitlement in respect of the Segregated Funds or Separate Account Funds (as applicable);³⁰ and
- (vi) the arrangement is an agency relationship under which the Customer Transactions are held on a trust³¹ under New York law, which includes trust law concepts similar to those in England.

It appears from the above that the incidents of ownership of the Customer Transactions are split between the FCM and the Customer and, more broadly, the features of this split in the incidents of ownership are consistent with the characteristics of a trust under English law set out above. Therefore, to the extent not covered by the RT Act, an English court is likely to conclude that the Agent-Trust should be characterised as a trust arrangement under English law.

3.3.2 Applying the same principles to a U.S. Trust, the following observations can be made:

²⁶ Section VI.A, page 39 of the S&C Memorandum.

²⁷ Section VI.A, page 39 of the S&C Memorandum.

²⁸ See our assumption in respect of this point at paragraph 6.10 of Section I of this Memorandum.

²⁹ Paragraphs 1.32 to 1.35 of the Summary Annex.

³⁰ Section XI.A.2, pages 104-105 of the S&C Memorandum.

³¹ See footnote 85 and the related text in the S&C Memorandum.

- (i) the FCM holds legal title to (a) the Segregated Funds credited to each Segregated Funds Account and (b) the Separate Account Funds (as applicable);³²
- (ii) each Customer has a beneficial interest in the Statutory Property as a whole (or multiple beneficial interests in sub-pools or classes of assets included in the Statutory Property) to the extent of the Net Liquidating Equity;³³
- (iii) funds equivalent to the Net Liquidating Equity for each Customer (as well as assets that each Customer has transferred to the FCM) are identified by way of book-keeping records of the FCM as belonging to such Customer;³⁴
- (iv) the Statutory Property is segregated from the FCM's assets (arguably, other than in respect of the Residual Interest the FCM maintains in each Segregated Funds Account and Separate Account Funds to prevent under-segregation);³⁵
- (v) none of the Statutory Property forms part of the FCM's general estate on insolvency;³⁶
- (vi) before the default of a Customer, the FCM is granted powers to deal with the funds in the context of Permitted Uses;³⁷

³² Section VI.A, page 39 of the S&C Memorandum. Notwithstanding that FCM holds legal title to the Statutory Property, and subject to what is said in footnote 36, we understand that U.S. commodities regulations and bankruptcy law puts the Customer Funds beyond the reach of an FCM's general creditors on an insolvency of the FCM.

³³ Section VI.B, pages 48 and 49 of the S&C Memorandum. We understand that the beneficial interest of each Customer in respect of the Statutory Property is to the extent of its Net Liquidating Equity in the Customer Account and if the Segregated Funds in the Segregated Funds Account or the Separate Account Funds (as applicable) exceeds the aggregate positive Net Liquidating Equities for Customers of the same Account Class having a beneficial interest in the Segregated Funds Account or the Separate Account Funds (as applicable) (but with no reduction for any negative Net Liquidating Equities that Customers may have), the FCM has a Residual Interest in the Segregated Funds or the Separate Account Funds (as applicable) and the terms of a U.S. Trust permit the FCM to withdraw funds from the Segregated Funds or the Separate Account Funds (as applicable) (including for its own proprietary uses) up to the value of that excess. This footnote is subject to the assumption in paragraph 6.15 of Section I of this Memorandum.

³⁴ See our assumption in respect of this point at paragraph 6.10 of Section I of this Memorandum.

³⁵ This is an exception to the requirement under the segregation rules and separate account rules for the FCM to maintain funds belonging to customers segregated from its own assets (see paragraphs 1.18 and 1.20 of the Summary Annex). The fact that the FCM's Residual Interest may be held in the same account as the Customer Funds does not preclude the characterisation of the arrangement as a trust provided that the other aspects of the arrangement point towards a trust. See *Re Lehman Brothers International (Europe)* [2009] EWHC 2545 (Ch) and *Re Lehman Brothers International (Europe)* [2010] EWHC 2914 (Ch). In addition, the FCM does not beneficially own any specific Segregated Funds or Separate Account Funds relating to its Residual Interest, so it is equally arguable that the Segregated Funds and Separate Account Funds are segregated from the FCM's assets.

³⁶ Paragraphs 1.32 – 1.36 of the Summary Annex. Note we have assumed that Customer Funds are not part of the general estate on insolvency in paragraph 6.13 of Section I of this Memorandum. If this assumption is not correct, then a U.S. Trust may not fall within the definition of a "trust" under the RT Act or, indeed, English common law. Our understanding of paragraphs 1.32 – 1.36 of the Summary Annex is that, although Customer Funds do fall within the insolvency estate of the FCM, they fall within a "special estate" of the FCM that is available for distribution only to Customers entitled to those Customer Funds. In our view, as such Customer Funds are not available for distribution to general creditors of the FCM, they do not fall within the general insolvency estate of the FCM. Put another way, the efficacy of the trust is secured in the insolvency of the FCM by creating a separate insolvency estate of the FCM to which only Customers have a claim. The effect of this is no different from excluding Customer Funds from the insolvency estate of the FCM. In our view, a U.S. Trust is therefore eligible for recognition as a trust under the RT Act and under English common law principles.

³⁷ See paragraph 3.8 of this Section II.

- (vii) after the default of a Customer, although the FCM may deal with the Statutory Property without regard to the directions of the Customer, the FCM must account to the Customer for the Net Liquidating Equity;³⁸ and
- (viii) the arrangement is characterised as a trust relationship under U.S. Federal law, which includes trust law concepts similar to those in England.³⁹

It appears from the above that the incidents of ownership of the Statutory Property are split between the FCM and the Customer under a U.S. Trust and, more broadly, the features of this split in the incidents of ownership are consistent with the definitions of a trust under English law set out above. Therefore, to the extent not covered by the RT Act, an English court is likely to conclude that a U.S. Trust should be characterised as a trust arrangement under English law.

3.4 Conflict of laws analysis of the trust provisions of the U.S. Clearing Model

3.4.1 Following from the analysis above and on the basis of the assumptions, qualifications and reasoning in this Memorandum, in our view:

- (i) the Agent-Trust and a U.S. Trust may fall within the RT Act;
- (ii) if either the Agent-Trust or a U.S. Trust do not fall within the RT Act, if the governing law of the trust determines the characterisation and validity of the trust, this will be a matter of New York or U.S. Federal law (as applicable) and we understand that in such cases a valid trust exists under such laws; and
- (iii) if either the Agent-Trust or a U.S. Trust do not fall within the RT Act and the governing law of the trust does not determine the characterisation of the trust, if this falls to be considered by an English court, this characterisation will be a matter of English law and both the Agent-Trust and a U.S. Trust would be recognised as trusts under English law, such that their governing law would determine their validity and we understand that in such cases a valid trust would be found to exist under such laws.

Therefore, if proceedings were brought before the English courts in respect of the Agent-Trust or a U.S. Trust and New York law or U.S. Federal law (as applicable) is pleaded and proved as a fact in accordance with English procedural and evidential rules to the effect that the Agent-Trust or a U.S. Trust gives rise to a trust under New York law or U.S. Federal law, the choice of New York law or U.S. Federal law as the governing law of the Agent-Trust and a U.S. Trust, respectively, would be recognised in England and accordingly New York law or U.S. Federal law (as applicable) would govern (a) the validity of the Agent-Trust and a U.S. Trust, and (b) matters affecting the nature of the interest of a Customer in the relevant Trust Property.

Likewise, if the English courts conclude that a U.S. Trust should be characterised as a trust arrangement under English common law as a result of the facts proven before such

³⁸ Section XI.A.2, of the S&C Memorandum.

³⁹ See paragraph 1.4.2 of this Section II.

court as described above, the choice of U.S. Federal law as the governing law of such U.S. Trust would be recognised in England and accordingly U.S. Federal law would govern (a) the validity of the U.S. Trust and (b) matters affecting the nature of the interest of a Customer in the U.S. Trust.

3.4.2 The conclusion by an English court that an Agent-Trust or a U.S. Trust should be recognised as a trust arrangement governed by New York law or U.S. Federal law, respectively, (as set out in paragraph 3.4.1 above) is subject to the following exceptions (the “**Trust Foreign Law Exceptions**”):

- (i) where the RT Act applies, the RT Act does not prevent the application of provisions of the law designated by the conflicts rules of the forum, in so far as those provisions cannot be derogated from by voluntary act, in certain areas related to trusts law;⁴⁰
- (ii) where the RT Act applies, the RT Act preserves the application of the mandatory rules of the forum which must be applied even to international situations, irrespective of conflict of laws;⁴¹
- (iii) where the RT Act applies, the provisions of the RT Act may be disregarded when their application would be manifestly incompatible with public policy;⁴²
- (iv) where the RT Act does not apply,⁴³ the English courts may not be restricted from applying overriding mandatory provisions of English law; and
- (v) where the RT Act does not apply, if there is a provision of New York law or U.S. Federal law, as the case may be, that is manifestly incompatible with English public policy, it is possible that the English courts may not apply it.

3.5 Application of the Trust Foreign Law Exceptions to the Agent-Trust and a U.S. Trust

It therefore falls to be considered whether the Agent-Trust and a U.S. Trust come within the scope of the Trust Foreign Law Exceptions:

3.5.1 Whilst there are a number of mandatory provisions that English law would apply in relation to trusts (for example, in relation to (i) the transfer of title to trust property and the creation of security interests over trust property where the *situs* of the trust property is England, and (ii) the protection, in other respects, of third parties acting in good faith where the third party is located in England), none of these provisions are directly relevant to the factual circumstances we have been asked to address. Mandatory provisions of English law that apply following commencement of insolvency proceedings are considered in paragraph 4 of this Section II. Whether the Agent-Trust and a U.S. Trust

⁴⁰ Article 15 of the Schedule to the RT Act.

⁴¹ Article 16 of the Schedule to the RT Act.

⁴² Article 18 of the Schedule to the RT Act.

⁴³ In which case, English common law conflict of law rules apply.

give rise to a security interest subject to mandatory registration requirements is considered in paragraph 6.2 of this Section II.

- 3.5.2** In respect of the Trust Foreign Law Exceptions described in paragraphs 3.4.2(iii) and (v) above, it is necessary to consider whether application of all or any of the trust provisions constitutes a penalty as a matter of English law. The two elements of the test in *Cavendish Square Holding BV v Talal El Makdessi*⁴⁴ are discussed in paragraph 2.2.5 of this Section II. In our opinion, the provisions of the Agent-Trust and a U.S. Trust would not be considered a secondary obligation or to not have a relation to the legitimate interests of an innocent party and so would not constitute a penalty. Furthermore, we do not believe that the trust provisions of the Agent-Trust and a U.S. Trust described in the Summary Annex would be manifestly incompatible with English public policy.
- 3.5.3** Therefore, we consider that (subject to the discussion in paragraph 4 of this Section II) none of the Trust Foreign Law Exceptions apply and so New York law would be recognised as the governing law of the Agent-Trust and U.S. Federal law would be recognised as the governing law of a U.S. Trust.

3.6 Risk of recharacterisation as a security interest under English law

Notwithstanding the discussion in paragraph 3.3 of this Section II, it might be argued that there are certain similarities between (i) the Agent-Trust or a U.S. Trust, and (ii) a security arrangement under English law, and so we analyse whether an English court may recharacterise those arrangements as creating a security interest rather than recognising each as a trust arrangement:

- 3.6.1** A security interest is created when a party (“**Party A**”) grants another party (“**Party B**”) a specifically enforceable right in the relevant property of Party A to secure the payment or discharge of a debt or other obligation owed by Party A to Party B and the relevant property is given as security only, not by way of outright transfer. The right is by way of grant of an interest in the debtor’s asset, not by way of reservation of title to the creditor.⁴⁵
- 3.6.2** In the case of *Re George Inglefield, Limited*, Romer LJ, although in the course of discussing the differences between a transaction of sale and a transaction of mortgage or charge, set out three basic non-exhaustive hallmarks of a security interest (which, notwithstanding the context of the case, may still be relevant to a determination by an English court of the substance of the Agent-Trust and a U.S. Trust):
- (i) a security interest entitles the grantor of the interest to recover the subject property, before the security is enforced, by returning the money initially paid to the grantor by the holder of the security interest. This right is the “equity of redemption”;⁴⁶

⁴⁴ [2015] UKSC 67.

⁴⁵ *McEntire v Crossley Bros* [1895] A.C. 457.

⁴⁶ In this respect, it is important that the liability that is secured by the security is distinct from a mere obligation to deliver or redeliver the property over which the security is created to ensure that there is an equity of redemption.

- (ii) if on the sale of property the subject of a security interest by the holder of such interest, the proceeds are more than is required to discharge the relevant secured obligations, the surplus must be returned to the grantor of the security interest; and
- (iii) conversely, if property the subject of a security interest realises on sale less than is required to discharge the relevant secured obligations, the grantor of the security interest remains liable for the shortfall.⁴⁷

3.6.3 On the basis of our understanding that the Agent-Trust and a U.S. Trust are trusts as a matter of U.S. law, we understand that the S&C Memorandum concludes that the Customer's ownership interests in the Customer Transactions comprising the Agent-Trust Property and the Customer Funds comprising the Statutory Property are subject to a security interest created by the Customer in favour of the FCM. Contrary to this however, it might be argued that, viewed as a whole under English law, the Agent-Trust and a U.S. Trust are better characterised under English law as trusts that are also a security interest in favour of the FCM over all or part of the Agent-Trust Property and Statutory Property. It has been acknowledged that a trust arrangement may also be characterised as a security arrangement under English law.⁴⁸ For the reasons set out in paragraphs 3.7 and 3.8 of this Section II, however, we do not think the English courts would construe the arrangements as such.

3.6.4 In *Welsh Development Agency v Export Finance Co Ltd*,⁴⁹ the Court of Appeal used a two-fold test to determine how an agreement should be characterised. First, the court must establish whether the documents constitute a sham intended to mask the true agreement of the parties. Second, the court must establish the proper legal characterisation of the actual legal relations between the parties.

3.6.5 We consider the potential for such recharacterisation in respect of the Agent-Trust and a U.S. Trust in paragraphs 3.7 and 3.8 of this Section II respectively.

3.7 The Agent-Trust as a security interest

3.7.1 There are certain features of the Agent-Trust which are similar to the features of a security interest. These similarities could support an argument that the Agent-Trust, as a matter of English law, creates a security interest in favour of the FCM over the Customer Transactions, as opposed to being a trust with a separate security interest over the Customer's beneficial interest in the Customer Transactions (as set out in the S&C Memorandum and the Summary Annex and to the extent such a security interest is created). They are as follows:

⁴⁷ [1933] Ch 1 (CA) 27-28.

⁴⁸ The English courts have characterised arrangements in which Person A transfers property to Person B, whereby Person B holds the property on trust for Person A, as security both in scenarios where the arrangement is to protect Person A from the insolvency of Person B and where the arrangement is to protect Person B from the insolvency of Person A.

⁴⁹ [1992] BCLC 148 (CA).

- (i) the Customer gives the FCM certain rights in respect of the Customer Transactions for the purposes of collateralising the Customer's obligations to the FCM; and
- (ii) there are certain restrictions on how the FCM is entitled to deal with the Customer Transactions, as (except in certain circumstances stipulated in the Clearing Agreement) the FCM acts as an agent of the Customer in respect of the Clearing Transactions and is therefore required to act upon the instructions of the Customer.

3.7.2 However, notwithstanding these similarities, legal title to the Customer Transactions is held by the FCM from the moment that a Customer Transaction is established with the DCO (or Foreign Futures Broker) – at no time does the Customer hold legal or beneficial title to a Customer Transaction. As soon as the Customer Transactions are entered into, they form part of the Agent-Trust Property held by the FCM and whilst the Customer has a beneficial interest in the Agent-Trust Property as a whole (or multiple *pro rata* beneficial interests in only subsets of the Agent-Trust Property, reflecting the Customer Transactions cleared by the FCM for that Customer)⁵⁰, the Customer does not have a beneficial interest in any specific Customer Transaction or a beneficial interest in the Customer Transactions outside the Agent-Trust. Having not previously held the legal title or the beneficial title to a particular Customer Transaction, the Customer could not, therefore, have created a security interest over the Customer Transactions.

3.7.3 In summary, whilst there are some common features between the Agent-Trust and a security interest under English law, the fact that the Customer does not hold the legal title or the beneficial title to a particular Customer Transaction before it becomes Agent-Trust Property is consistent with the recognition (under the RT Act or common law) or characterisation (under the common law) by an English court of the Agent-Trust as a trust arrangement and inconsistent with its characterisation as a security interest. In our view, therefore, an English court would not characterise the Agent-Trust as a security arrangement in favour of the FCM over the Customer Transactions which constitute Agent-Trust Property.

3.8 A U.S. Trust as a security interest

3.8.1 The similarities between a U.S. Trust and a security interest are the same as those between an Agent-Trust and a security interest, as set out above, except that the rights and restrictions are created over the Statutory Property rather than the Customer Transactions and with the following additional features:

- (i) there is a transfer of ownership of some assets from the Customer to the FCM when Customer Funds are delivered by the Customer to the FCM; and

⁵⁰ See our assumption in paragraph 6.18 of Section I and paragraph 1.4.1 of this Section II.

- (ii) one of the purposes for which Customer Funds are transferred from the Customer to the FCM is to collateralise amounts owed by the Customer to the FCM.

3.8.2 However, it is important to note that the Statutory Property is not exclusively comprised of Customer Funds, but also includes the FCM's Residual Interest and other assets delivered into segregation (see paragraph 1.4.3 of this Section II) (which together constitute the Segregated Funds and Separate Account Funds (as applicable)). As explained in paragraphs 1.12, 1.13, 1.16 and 1.20 of the Summary Annex, the FCM is required (a) in respect of the Customer Funds of US Futures customers and Cleared Swaps customers, pursuant to the segregation rules, and (b) in respect of the Customer Funds of Foreign Futures customers, pursuant to the separate account rules, to maintain its own funds (which may mean it is required to deposit its own funds) in the Segregated Funds Account or Separate Accounts (as applicable) (which are commingled with the Customer Funds) as a cushion of proprietary funds in order to protect against becoming under-segregated by failing to hold a sufficient amount of Segregated Funds or Separate Account Funds (as applicable) to meet the CFTC's segregation or separate account requirement (as applicable).

3.8.3 Such obligation of the FCM to deposit or maintain its own funds to the Segregated Funds Account and Separate Accounts (as applicable) is inconsistent with the creation of security by the Customer over the Segregated Funds and Separate Account Funds (as applicable) because, whilst the Customer has a beneficial interest in the Statutory Property as a whole (or multiple beneficial interests in sub-pools or classes of assets included in the Statutory Property)⁵¹, the Customer does (or, in the case of (b), did) not have a beneficial interest in either (a) any specific asset comprised in the Segregated Funds or Separate Account Funds (as applicable), or (b) the Segregated Funds or Separate Account Funds (as applicable) transferred into a U.S. Trust by someone other than it (including a DCO, a Foreign Futures Broker or a different customer). Having not previously held the legal title or the beneficial title to the proprietary funds of the FCM or funds transferred to the FCM by a DCO (or Foreign Futures Broker or different customer), the Customer could not, therefore, have created a security interest over the Segregated Funds or Separate Account Funds (as applicable). The existence of a Residual Interest is also more consistent with the characterisation of a U.S. Trust as a trust rather than as a security interest.

3.8.4 Additionally, we understand from the S&C Memorandum and the Summary Annex that the FCM has in respect of each Statutory Arrangement, under the terms of the Clearing Agreement and each Statutory Arrangement, by way of operation of New York law and U.S. Federal law (as applicable),⁵² a right to withdraw funds from the Statutory Property

⁵¹ See our assumption in paragraph 6.18 of Section I and paragraph 1.4.2 of this Section II.

⁵² *"Even without the express authorization contained in the customer agreement, the Restatement (Second) of Agency provided that:*

An agent whose principal violates or threatens to violate a contractual or restitutional duty to him has an appropriate remedy. He can, in a proper case ... exercise the rights of a lien holder" at page 117.

comprised in the relevant Statutory Arrangement for certain purposes in the circumstances and manner described in the S&C Memorandum and paragraphs 1.19 and 1.20 of the Summary Annex. These purposes fall broadly into two categories:

(i) Permitted Uses

The FCM is permitted to withdraw from segregation or separate accounts (as applicable) and apply Statutory Property in respect of each Account Class as necessary in the normal course of business to margin, guarantee, secure, transfer, adjust or settle a Customer's transactions with a DCO (or Foreign Futures Broker) or (in respect of Segregated Funds) another FCM, including (in respect of Segregated Funds) to pay commissions, brokerage, interest, taxes, storage and other charges incurred in connection with that Customer's Customer Transactions. As noted in paragraph 2.2 of the Summary Annex, the Permitted Uses for which the FCM can withdraw funds directly from the Statutory Property also includes some of the costs and expenses incurred during a Liquidation and in the exercise of its rights under the Clearing Agreement following a Customer's default.

(ii) Proprietary Uses

Separately and as noted in paragraphs 1.18 and 1.20 of the Summary Annex, the segregation rules and separate account rules also permit the FCM to withdraw funds from the Statutory Property for its own proprietary uses up to the value of its Residual Interest, subject to certain limitations and conditions ("**Proprietary Uses**"). The FCM may not withdraw amounts directly from the Statutory Property to meet Chargeable Costs. The FCM may, however, debit Chargeable Costs from the Customer's Account, which causes a corresponding reduction in the Customer's Net Liquidating Equity and a corresponding increase in the FCM's Residual Interest. We understand that the effect of this arrangement is to satisfy the Chargeable Costs (as they have been charged to the Customer Account) and increase the FCM's beneficial interest in the relevant Statutory Arrangement (its Residual Interest), allowing the FCM to withdraw amounts from the relevant Statutory Arrangement for Proprietary Uses, which amounts become the property of the FCM upon withdrawal.⁵³ The Residual Interest of the FCM in each Statutory Arrangement is structurally subordinate to each Customer's entitlement to the Net Liquidating Equity as it is determined by exhaustion once each Customer's Net Liquidating Equities have been determined. In our view, in respect of each U.S. Trust, a Proprietary Use is analogous to the power of the FCM to return excess Customer Funds to a Customer and both effectively

"Under both common law and (we assume) the customer agreement, as well as under Section 4d of the CEA, the FCM has the right, when accounting to its customer, to deduct any advances made from the balance of the customer account" at page 123. "The legislative history surrounding the adoption of the safe harbors for commodity contracts in the U.S. Bankruptcy Code supports the conclusions that both the industry and the sponsors of the safe harbors recognized an FCM's ability to enforce its lien against the customer account and set off amount following a customer default" at page 124.

⁵³ A right to a Proprietary Use may also arise for other reasons, such as when an FCM contributes its own assets to the Segregated Funds or Separate Account Funds to cover a Customer's negative net liquidating equity, which is then then made good by the Customer.

amount to the power of the FCM as trustee to allocate trust assets to or for the benefit of defined beneficiaries of a trust in accordance with the terms of the trust.

- 3.8.5** In the event of a Customer default, the FCM is entitled to effect a Liquidation. We understand and have assumed in paragraph 6.14 of Section I of this Memorandum that, in conducting a Liquidation the FCM will only withdraw amounts from the Statutory Property for Permitted Uses or Proprietary Uses. We need to consider what the proper characterisation of Permitted Uses and Proprietary Uses is under English law for the purposes of determining whether such characterisation raises any English law requirements for their validity.
- 3.8.6** As noted earlier, Permitted Uses are those purposes that entitle the FCM to use the Statutory Property directly to discharge permitted costs and expenses of the relevant Statutory Arrangement rather than having first to discharge these costs and expenses out of its own resources and seek reimbursement from the Customer or the Statutory Arrangements. We understand that the FCM's right or power to apply such amounts exists under the terms of each Statutory Arrangement and is not considered to amount to the enforcement of a security interest under applicable U.S. law. In our view, in respect of each U.S. Trust, Permitted Uses equates to a conventional power of a trustee to deal with trust assets in the administration of a trust and it would not therefore, be characterised as a security interest.
- 3.8.7** We also need to consider whether the arrangement by which the FCM has the right to charge Chargeable Costs to the Customer Account, coupled with an entitlement the FCM to withdraw the Statutory Property for Proprietary Uses amounts to a security interest under English law. In our view, it does not. As noted previously, a security interest involves the creation of a proprietary interest in an asset owned by Party A in favour of Party B to secure a liability of Party A to Party B. When the liability is discharged, Party A is entitled to the return of the asset by virtue of the equity of redemption. In the context of a U.S. Trust, the state of the Customer Account is determinative of the Customer's beneficial interest in the Statutory Arrangement(s).⁵⁴ There is no liability for the Customer Funds to secure and an entitlement to Customer Funds only exists when the Customer Account has a positive balance.
- 3.8.8** Further, the fact that the terms of a U.S. Trust do not secure any specific or particular obligation of the Customer to the FCM strengthens this argument. It is clear from the above analysis that the terms of a U.S. Trust permit the FCM to apply Statutory Property comprised in the relevant Statutory Arrangement to enable the FCM to perform its obligations incurred in connection with the Transactions, which are held on the Agent-Trust or for its own proprietary uses. The purpose of a U.S. Trust is therefore, to enable the FCM to use the Statutory Property either for the purpose of administering the relevant Statutory Arrangement or for allocating the Statutory Property to or for the benefit of defined beneficiaries of the relevant U.S. Trust in accordance with the terms of the U.S.

⁵⁴ We understand from the S&C Memorandum and the Summary Annex that the legal nature of the arrangement to withdraw funds from the Segregated Account and Separate Account Funds for Permitted or Proprietary Uses is such that it is determinative of the Customer's and the FCM's entitlement in respect of each Statutory Arrangement and not an encumbrance on the Statutory Property of each Statutory Arrangement. See also paragraph 1.4.3 of this Section II.

Trust. This analysis is consistent with the recognition (under the RT Act or English common law) or characterisation (under the English common law) by an English court of a U.S. Trust as a trust arrangement, with the Permitted Uses and Proprietary Uses each forming part of such a trust arrangement, and inconsistent with the characterisation of any of a U.S. Trust, Permitted Uses or Proprietary Uses as a security interest.

- 3.8.9** In our view, therefore, an English court would not recharacterise the arrangements under a U.S. Trust as a security arrangement in favour of the FCM over the Segregated Funds and Separate Account Funds which constitute the trust property.

4 Analysis of the U.S. Clearing Model following the commencement of insolvency proceedings in respect of the Customer⁵⁵

We note that the liquidation provisions of the U.S. Clearing Model may apply following the default of a Customer both before and after the commencement of insolvency proceedings in respect of the Customer. The analysis in paragraphs 2 and 3 of this Section II considers the position following the default of a Customer before the commencement of insolvency proceedings. If English insolvency proceedings are commenced in respect of the Customer, the analysis in this paragraph 4 will apply.

4.1 General Insolvency Principles and Statutory Avoidance Provisions

4.1.1 If English insolvency proceedings are commenced in respect of the Customer, the question arises as to whether certain transactions which took place before or after the commencement of liquidation or administration of the Customer might be affected by reason of the General Insolvency Principles or the Statutory Avoidance Provisions (as defined below). Before analysing the Statutory Avoidance Provisions and the General Insolvency Principles in greater detail, we set out the context in which these rules may be applied.

4.1.2 The General Insolvency Principles and the Statutory Avoidance Provisions apply to transactions entered into by an English company. However, a Customer is not a party to the Transactions, which are entered into on a principal-to-principal basis between the FCM and the DCO (or Foreign Futures Broker). Upon a default of a Customer, the liquidation of Customer Transactions (and any related positions) is effected in accordance with the Clearing Agreement, including the rules of each relevant DCO (or the clearing agreement between the FCM and its Foreign Futures Broker). In effecting this liquidation, the FCM will be closing out and entering into contractual arrangements and transactions with DCOs (or Foreign Futures Brokers) and other third parties as permitted by the Clearing Agreement. The Customer will not be closing out or entering into such contractual arrangements and transactions.⁵⁶

⁵⁵ Our analysis in this paragraph 4 of Section II in respect of the Statutory Arrangement(s) is given in respect of a U.S. Trust only. We provide no opinion regarding the application of the General Insolvency Principles or the Statutory Avoidance Principles where the relevant Statutory Arrangement is not recognised as a valid trust under U.S. Federal or state law (see paragraph 1.4.2 of this Section II).

⁵⁶ See section XI.A.2 of the S&C Memorandum.

- 4.1.3** As noted in paragraphs 1.10 and 1.11 of the Summary Annex, there are no separate transactions as between the Customer and the FCM. Rather, there is an overall duty of the FCM to account to the Customer for the net amount due under the terms of the Agent-Trust and a U.S. Trust. On the assumption that New York law and U.S. Federal law provide that a Customer's beneficial interest(s) in the Agent-Trust Property or any U.S. Trust is not an interest in any specific asset that constitutes the relevant trust but rather is a beneficial interest in the relevant Trust Property as a whole (or multiple beneficial interests in subsets of the Agent-Trust Property or sub-pools or classes of assets included in the Statutory Trust Property (as applicable)),⁵⁷ English law would not treat the Customer as having an ownership right in any specific item of the Trust Property outright.⁵⁸
- 4.1.4** As set out in the Summary Annex, following a default by the Customer, the FCM brings about the liquidation of Customer Transactions by way of:
- (i) Position Liquidation, which may include (a) entering into certain transactions with the DCO (namely, Offsetting Transactions, risk-reducing transactions or hedging transactions and/or any other transaction entered into in order to effect a Position Liquidation (if any)), or (b) causing the DCO or foreign clearing organisation to debit or otherwise remove the FCM's omnibus customer positions account (or the Foreign Futures Broker's omnibus customer positions account maintained by the foreign clearing organisation) by book-entry transfer of the position to either the FCM's house account or a third party's account, which in either case may be completed as a single position transfer or as part of a transfer of a portfolio of open positions; and
 - (ii) Margin Liquidation.
- 4.1.5** Following the determination of the cumulative increase or decrease to the Customer's cash balance resulting from the Position Liquidation and Margin Liquidation (as described in paragraph 2.9 of the Summary Annex), the FCM will determine the Determination of Account payable in connection with the liquidation (which may include its own properly incurred costs and expenses).
- 4.1.6** As described in paragraph 2.10 of the Summary Annex, if the Customer's Account includes only one Account Class, then there is a single Determination of Account. If the Customer's Account comprises multiple Account Classes, then there will be a separate Determination of Account for each Account Class and, unless the Customer Agreement provides otherwise, the FCM will aggregate or offset the credit balances or debit balances of all Account Classes to determine a single aggregate credit or debit balance in respect of the Customer Account. As described in paragraphs 2.11 - 2.15 of the Summary Annex, the determination of a single aggregate credit or debit balance in respect of the Customer Account may be achieved, at the option of the FCM, through a choice of legal methods described in those paragraphs, being (A) a determination of a

⁵⁷ See our assumption in paragraph 6.18 of Section I and paragraph 1.4.2 of this Section II.

⁵⁸ *Stephenson (Inspector of Taxes) v Barclays Bank Trust Co. Ltd.* [1975] 1 W.L.R. 882.

single account and not set-off, (B) a set-off of amounts held on trust for the Customer against a liability owed by a Customer to the FCM, (C) the charging of Chargeable Costs to the Customer Account leading to an increase in the value of the FCM's Residual Interest and the withdrawal by the FCM of its Residual Interest for Proprietary Uses, and (D) the enforcement by the FCM of the Security Interest to discharge liabilities for an Account Class.

4.1.7 Each of the Statutory Avoidance Provisions and General Insolvency Principles are set out below and analysed in the context of the U.S. Clearing Model.

4.1.8 The immediately following sub-paragraphs (i), (ii) and (iii) of paragraph 4.1.9 of this Section II set out certain insolvency provisions relevant to the analysis, and together, they constitute the “**General Insolvency Principles**”.

4.1.9 Taking the General Insolvency Principles in turn:

- (i) the mandatory insolvency set-off rules,⁵⁹ which apply to mutual credits and debits of an insolvent entity provide a set mechanic and procedure for ensuring, provided certain requirements are met, that a party's various dealings with its counterparty will be set off against each other following the winding-up or administration of that counterparty. The rules are automatic and self-executing.⁶⁰ They will not however be relevant to the liquidation of the Agent-Trust Property and any Statutory Property by an FCM within a single Account Class following the commencement of insolvency proceedings in respect of a Customer because following the liquidation of Customer Transactions by the FCM, any gains or losses resulting from the liquidation will be reflected in the Net Liquidating Equity of the Customer and a single net amount is determined which represents the Customer's entitlement under the Clearing Agreement. Whilst this may appear to be a form of netting or set-off, in relation to the Clearing Agreement, the Customer only ever has an entitlement to this single net amount. This represents a determination of the overall value of the single course of dealing between the FCM and the Customer rather the exercise of set off in respect of a number of different transactions – there are no distinct transactions or obligations that are separate from the proprietary interest of the Customer in (x) the Agent-Trust

⁵⁹ These are currently enshrined, in relation to a liquidation, in Rule 14.25 of the Insolvency Rules, and, in relation to administrations, in Rule 14.24 of the Insolvency Rules. Rule 14.25 of the Insolvency Rules applies immediately upon the commencement of liquidation or winding up proceedings. Rule 14.24 of the Insolvency Rules applies from the moment that the administrator gives formal notice that it intends to make a distribution to creditors. Rules 14.25 and 14.24 of the Insolvency Rules provide that an account must be taken of what is due from the company and a creditor to each other in respect of their mutual dealings (as defined in Rules 14.25 and 14.24 respectively) and the sums due from the one must be set off against the sums due from the other. If there is a balance owed to the creditor then only that balance is provable in the winding-up or administration. If there is a balance owed to the company that must be paid to the liquidator or administrator as part of the assets. However, if all or part of the balance owed to the company results from a contingent or prospective debt owed by the creditor, then the balance (or that part of it which results from the contingent or prospective debt) must be paid in full if and when that debt becomes due and payable. There is a concern that amounts held by the FCM on trust for one Account Class would not fall within the mutual dealings definition in relation to liabilities of the Customer incurred in respect of other Account Classes. In addition, there are strict rules as to the timing of set off, the dates on which FX conversions into sterling must be made and the applicable FX rates, which are likely to be incompatible with the Liquidation process.

⁶⁰ *Stein v Blake* [1995] 2 All ER 961.

Property or the Statutory Property, on the one hand or (y) the Customer's entitlement under the Clearing Agreement, on the other hand. To the extent, however, that (a) the Customer's Account comprises multiple Account Classes, (b) there is a separate Determination of Account for each Account Class, (c) a single Determination of Account across all Account Classes in respect of the Customer Account is achieved, and (d) such single Determination of Account involves a set-off, such set-off will only be permitted to the extent that it complies with the mandatory insolvency set-off rules to the extent that they apply (see footnote 59). It should, however, be noted that, in practice, administration (or a form thereof) is the most likely form of insolvency proceeding to which a Customer will be subject, and in an administration the point at which the mandatory set-off rules would apply is likely to be a significant amount of time after the administration commences, with the consequence that it is likely that any set-off arising under the Clearing Agreement will have taken effect prior to the point at which the mandatory set-off rules would apply, meaning the mandatory set-off rules are unlikely to be relevant;

- (ii) on a voluntary winding-up of a company under English law, section 107 of the Insolvency Act provides for the satisfaction of the company's liabilities by the application of the company's property in favour of the company's creditors on a *pari passu* basis (subject to the satisfaction of any preferential claims). There is no equivalent provision relating to a compulsory winding-up under English law. However, Rule 14.12 of the Insolvency Rules states that debts, other than preferential debts, rank equally between themselves. Under English law, the parties to an agreement cannot contract out of this *pari passu* rule.⁶¹ It could be argued that the application by the FCM of the Statutory Property to Permitted Uses or Proprietary Uses following the commencement of insolvency proceedings in respect of the Customer where other creditors of the Customer do not recover amounts owed to them in full, would contravene the *pari passu* rule. We understand, however, that under applicable U.S. law the Permitted Uses and Proprietary Uses are an inherent element of a U.S. Trust and, in the case of Permitted Uses, rank ahead of (because it is determinative of) the Customer's interests in the Statutory Property (see our discussion in respect of Permitted Uses in paragraph 3.8.4(i) of this Section II) and, in the context of Proprietary Uses, only arises when the FCM has a Residual Interest in a U.S. Trust and so does not involve the allocation of property belonging to the company. An English court is therefore likely to conclude that as the Customer's interest in the Statutory Property is limited to the Net Liquidating Equity, it is subject to the FCM's right to withdraw funds for Permitted Uses and Proprietary Uses; and
- (iii) the anti-deprivation rule is a separate, but parallel, principle to the *pari passu* rule which states that a person cannot agree that their property will be forfeited or transferred to another, or confiscated, on their insolvency. Similarly, any provisions to the effect that amounts payable by the insolvent party under a

⁶¹ *British Eagle International Airlines Limited v Compagnie Nationale Air France* [1975] 2 All ER 390.

contract are increased upon insolvency are unenforceable. The anti-deprivation rule would only be relevant in the context of the U.S. Clearing Model if, on the insolvency of a Customer, the terms on which Customer Transactions or Statutory Property are liquidated meant that there was some form of deprivation (e.g. Transactions or Statutory Property are taken away from the FCM for no value or a reduced value so as to deprive the Customer's interest in the Agent-Trust Property or Statutory Property of value).

In our view, a Liquidation of the Agent-Trust Property and the Statutory Property would not be considered to be a deprivation as there is no property which is forfeited or confiscated or amount payable increased – the Liquidation simply produces a single net amount after the deduction of all costs, expenses and liabilities incurred by the FCM for the account of the Customer that are properly chargeable to the Customer, which is reflected in the balance of the Customer Account and represents the Customer's entitlement in respect of the Statutory Property (being the Net Liquidating Equity), which, in any case, is the extent of the Customer's beneficial interest in such Statutory Property at any point. The anti-deprivation rule was considered in the Supreme Court case of *Belmont Park Investments Pty Ltd v BNY Corporate Trustee Services Ltd*⁶² where it was held that a "common sense application" of the rule was required in each case. The judgments in *Belmont Park* propose that the correct approach is essentially one of analysing whether or not the arrangements are designed improperly to get around the insolvency principles. The starting point is that a "*deliberate intention to evade the insolvency laws is required*".⁶³ This is not a purely purposive test – "*that does not mean of course that a subjective intention is required, or that there will not be cases so obvious that an intention can be inferred*". But "*a commercially sensible transaction entered into in good faith should not be held to infringe the anti-deprivation rule*".⁶⁴ "*The Court has to make an objective assessment of the purpose and effect of the relevant transaction or provision in bankruptcy, when considering whether it amounts to an illegitimate evasion of the bankruptcy law or has a legitimate commercial basis in other considerations*".⁶⁵ It was also clear that the courts will be slow to strike down "*a complex commercial transaction entered in good faith*".⁶⁶ We have assumed⁶⁷ that the arrangements under the U.S. Clearing Model are entered into for *bona fide* commercial reasons and our understanding is that they are not intended to evade insolvency principles. Consequently, we consider that the Agent-Trust and a U.S. Trust do not contravene the anti-deprivation rule.

⁶² [2011] UKSC 38.

⁶³ At paragraph 78.

⁶⁴ At paragraph 79.

⁶⁵ At paragraph 151.

⁶⁶ At paragraph 109.

⁶⁷ See paragraph 6.5 of Section I of this Memorandum.

4.1.10 This paragraph 4.1.10 sets out certain statutory insolvency principles relevant to the analysis, and together, they constitute the “**Statutory Avoidance Provisions**”. Taking the applicable Statutory Avoidance Provisions in turn:⁶⁸

- (i) under section 127 of the Insolvency Act, if a company makes a disposition of assets after the date of commencement of its winding-up, then such transaction shall be void unless the court orders otherwise. For these purposes the date of commencement of the winding-up is deemed to be the date of the petition for a winding-up by the court. If the FCM effects a Margin Liquidation or Position Liquidation following the commencement of the winding-up of the Customer, or withdraws amounts from the Statutory Property for Permitted Uses or Proprietary Uses, this could be argued to be a breach of section 127 of the Insolvency Act. However, on the understanding that the Customer’s trust entitlement is to the Net Liquidating Equity, as described in the Summary Annex, and the Residual Interest constitutes the FCM’s own funds, a withdrawal of funds by the FCM for Permitted Uses or Proprietary Uses would not be regarded as the disposition of an asset of the Customer. This is clearly the case in respect of the Agent-Trust Property or any U.S. Trust Property because the Customer does not have an interest in any specific Customer Transaction or U.S. Trust Property - see paragraphs 1.4.1 and 1.4.2(i) of this section II;
- (ii) under section 178 of the Insolvency Act, a liquidator may disclaim any onerous property, which is essentially any unprofitable contract or property which is not readily saleable or is such that it may give rise to a liability to pay money or perform any other onerous act. As the Customer is not party to the Transactions, which are entered into between the FCM and a DCO (or Foreign Futures Broker), they could not be considered as “onerous property” of the Customer and could not, therefore, be disclaimed. The only contract that could be disclaimed is the Clearing Agreement and it is not possible to disclaim a part of it;
- (iii) under section 238 of the Insolvency Act, a transaction entered into by a company which at such time was unable to pay its debts within the meaning of section 123 of the Insolvency Act or became unable to pay its debts within the meaning of that section in consequence of that transaction, may be set aside by an English court if it determines that the transaction is at an undervalue (and certain other requirements are satisfied). A transaction at an undervalue is one under which the company either (a) receives no consideration or (b) receives consideration but the value of such consideration is “significantly less” than the value of the consideration provided by the company. It should be noted, however, that section 238 expressly provides that the court shall not make any such order if it is satisfied that the company entered into the transaction in good faith and for the purpose of carrying on its business and that, at the time it did so, there were

⁶⁸ We note that Regulation 10 of the FC Regulations disapplies some of the statutory avoidance provisions (most notably sections 127 and 178 of the Insolvency Act). However, the FC Regulations will not apply to trust arrangements and, as discussed in paragraph 6.1.4 of this Section II, will not apply to the Security Interest to the extent it is not a security financial collateral arrangement.

reasonable grounds for believing that the transaction would benefit the company. As discussed in sub-paragraph (ii) above, the Customer does not enter into the Transactions and so they could not be considered to be at an undervalue as regards the Customer. In the unlikely event that the transfer of Customer Funds from the Customer to the FCM is considered by an English court to be a transaction, we believe that the exemption discussed above (in relation to the transaction being entered into in good faith, for the purpose of carrying on the Customer's business and for the benefit of the Customer) would apply;

- (iv) under section 239 of the Insolvency Act, if an insolvent company does anything or suffers anything to be done which has the effect of putting a creditor into a position which, in the event of the company going into insolvent liquidation, would be better than the position that person would have been in if that thing had not been done, then there may be a voidable preference. However, a court cannot make an order under that section 239 unless the company was influenced in deciding to give the preference by a desire to put that person in such better position. We have assumed in paragraph 6.5 of Section I of this Memorandum that the Transactions are entered into for *bona fide* commercial reasons so that section 239 would not apply even were it to apply to Transactions to which the Customer is not a party. We understand and assume that the transfer of Customer Funds by the Customer is not influenced by the desire to put the FCM into a better position but, rather, reflects the operation of the Clearing Agreement, the applicable rules of the DCO (or the applicable clearing agreement between the FCM and its Foreign Futures Broker), the Agent-Trust and a U.S. Trust in accordance with their respective terms;
- (v) section 244 of the Insolvency Act provides that where a transaction to which a company is, or has been, a party for or involving the provision of credit to the company is held to be "extortionate" (as explained below) the court may set aside any obligation created thereunder (in whole or in part), including those of sureties, and can amend any term of the transaction and any security executed in connection with it. The court can also require either party to the transaction to make repayments under it. For these purposes a transaction is extortionate if, having regard to the risk accepted by the person providing the credit, (a) the terms of it are or were such as to require grossly exorbitant payments to be made (whether unconditionally or in certain contingencies) in respect of the provision of the credit or (b) it otherwise grossly contravened ordinary principles of fair dealing. As the Customer is not a party to the Transactions, section 244 cannot apply to them. We understand and assume that the transfer of Customer Funds by the Customer to the FCM would not be held to be extortionate, but, rather, reflects the operation of the Clearing Agreement, the Agent-Trust and a U.S. Trust in accordance with their respective terms; and
- (vi) under section 423 of the Insolvency Act, if a transaction is, at the time, entered into at an undervalue for the purpose of putting the assets of a company beyond the reach of a creditor or prospective creditor or otherwise prejudicing the

interests of the creditor or prospective creditor, the court may make such an order as it thinks fit for restoring the position to what it would have been if the transaction had not been entered into and protecting the interests of the victims of the transaction. As the Customer is not a party to the Transactions, section 423 cannot apply to them. We understand and assume that the transfer of Customer Funds by the Customer to the FCM is not at an undervalue and is not intended to put assets of the Customer beyond the reach of a creditor or prospective creditor or otherwise prejudicing the interests of the creditor or prospective creditor, but, rather, reflects the operation of the Clearing Agreement, the Agent-Trust and a U.S. Trust in accordance with their respective terms.

Our analysis above applies equally to the equivalent Statutory Avoidance Provisions introduced under the Banking Act and the Investment Bank Regulations.

4.1.11 Accordingly, on the basis of the assumptions and analysis in this Memorandum, in our view neither the General Insolvency Principles nor the Statutory Avoidance Provisions apply to:

- (i) the Transactions;
- (ii) the various methods by which an FCM can bring about a Position Liquidation and a Margin Liquidation in respect of the Agent-Trust Property and the Statutory Property in respect of which the Customer has a U.S. Trust Beneficial Interest (other than by way of enforcement of security, which is considered in paragraph 6.1 of this Section II); and
- (iii) the Determination of Account in respect of the Agent-Trust Property and the Statutory Property in respect of which the Customer has a U.S. Trust Beneficial Interest, pursuant to which, following a Position Liquidation and a Margin Liquidation, a single net amount is determined by the FCM, which forms part of the Customer's Statutory Arrangement entitlement (other than as described under paragraph 4.1.9(i) of this Section II relating to the General Insolvency Principles in relation to set-off or by way of enforcement of security, which is considered in paragraph 6.1 of this Section II).

4.2 Impact of the Customer's insolvency on the grant of the security interest

The creation of the Security Interest on the execution of the Clearing Agreement may, however, be vulnerable to being set aside by the courts on the insolvency of the Customer if it offends any the General Insolvency Principles or the Statutory Avoidance Provisions.

4.2.1 Statutory Avoidance Principles:

- (i) The granting of a charge over property is capable of amounting to a disposition for the purposes of section 127 of the Insolvency Act. We refer to our assumption in paragraph 6.4 of Part I of this Memorandum that the Customer will not be subject to bankruptcy or liquidation proceedings on their execution of the Clearing Agreement (and consequent creation of the Security Interest), meaning

that the creation of the Security Interest will not, in our view, be void as a disposition under section 127 of the Insolvency Act.

- (ii) We refer to our assumption in paragraph 6.5 of Part I of this Memorandum that the Clearing Agreement and arrangements thereunder have been or will be entered into for *bona fide* commercial reasons, on arm's length commercial terms, meaning that the Clearing Agreement and the Security Interest will not amount to onerous property for the purpose of section 178 of the Insolvency Act.
- (iii) We refer to our assumption in paragraph 6.4 of Part I of this Memorandum that the Clearing Agreement will not be entered into at a time described in that assumption. As a result, the creation of the Security Interest will not give rise to a transaction at an undervalue as described in paragraph 4.1.10(iii) above or a preference as described in paragraph 4.1.10(iv).
- (iv) We refer to our assumption in paragraph 6.5 of Part I of this Memorandum that the Clearing Agreement and arrangements thereunder have been or will be entered into for *bona fide* commercial reasons, on arm's length commercial terms. As a result, we do not believe that the creation of the Security Interest will give rise to an extortionate credit transaction as described in paragraph 4.1.10(v).
- (v) Subject to there being no dealings between the parties to the contrary, the courts will also not, in our view, regard the creation of the Security interest as being a transaction in fraud of creditors on the basis that, on its face, the Security Interest is intended to mitigate the FCM's credit exposure to the Customer in respect of the clearing services the FCM provides to the Customer pursuant to the Clearing Agreement (and therefore is not for the purpose of putting assets beyond the reach of other persons or to prejudice the interests of another person making a claim against each party).

4.2.2 Anti-Deprivation Rule

We refer to our assumption in paragraph 6.4 of Part I of this Memorandum that the Clearing Agreement will not be entered into at a time described in that assumption, meaning that the creation of the Security Interest at that time will not, in our view, fall foul of the anti-deprivation principle.

4.2.3 *Pari Passu* Rule

The creation of the Security Interest will not, in our view, offend the *pari passu* rule as the Security Interest is a security arrangement in favour of the FCM, which becomes a secured creditor of the Customer, as opposed to granting the FCM (if it was an unsecured creditor) more than its proper share of the Customer's assets on insolvency.

4.3 Foreign currency debts

- 4.3.1 It is also necessary to consider whether, in the event that the FCM determines the single net amount which is either the Customer's entitlement under the Clearing Agreement or

its liability under the Clearing Agreement in a currency other than sterling, an English court would enforce a claim for such amount in such currency and whether a claim for such amount can be proved in insolvency proceedings in England without conversion into sterling.

- 4.3.2** Rule 14.21 of the Insolvency Rules (“**Rule 14.21**”) sets out the position in respect of foreign currency debts on the winding up or administration of a debtor. It states that “a proof for a debt incurred or payable in a foreign currency must state the amount of the debt in that currency. The office-holder must convert all such debts into sterling at a single rate for each currency determined by the office-holder by reference to the exchange rates prevailing on” the date on which the company entered administration or went into liquidation (as appropriate). This is because claims in an insolvency proceeding which is governed by English law must be made in sterling. Rule 14.21 does not specify which exchange rate is to be used. Creditors must however be informed of the exchange rate used and have a right of redress to the courts in the event that they consider the exchange rate unreasonable. If the court finds that the rate is unreasonable it may itself determine the exchange rate.⁶⁹
- 4.3.3** These provisions will apply to any single net amount determined to be due to or from a Customer to the FCM and will not affect the liquidation mechanics of the Clearing Agreement to the extent that they are otherwise not in contravention of the General Insolvency Principles and the Statutory Avoidance Provisions.

5 The applicable law determinative of the effectiveness of the Security Interest

5.1 Overview

- 5.1.1** You have asked us to consider which law(s) an English court would consider to be the applicable law(s) to determine the effect of the creation of a security interest in the Customer's rights and interest in the Charged Assets.
- 5.1.2** Under English law, there is no single answer to the question of the law determinative of the proprietary aspects of the Customer's interest in the Charged Assets. The answer is specific to the context.
- 5.1.3** English common law principles apply to determine these questions only if, and to the extent, not codified in statute (including any relevant secondary legislation). For present purposes, we consider the application of the UK Rome I Regulation and the FC Regulations.
- 5.1.4** We understand that the security will be over two distinct types of property. Firstly, security over the contractual rights of the Customer against the FCM and secondly security over proprietary (or *in rem*) rights in respect of the Charged Assets. Paragraph 5.2.1 analyses the former and paragraphs 5.2.2 and 5.3 analyse the latter.

⁶⁹ Note that if the FC Regulations apply, Rule 14.21 will be displaced by Regulation 14 of the FC Regulations which provides, broadly, that the specific provisions in a financial collateral arrangement regarding the currency in which obligations are to be calculated and the rate of any currency conversions will be effective, unless the rate set through the arrangement is unreasonable.

5.2 Statutory Analysis

5.2.1 UK Rome I Regulation

(i) Scope of the UK Rome I Regulation

As we note in paragraph 2.1 of this Section II, the UK Rome I Regulation sets out the core rule that the law applicable to govern contractual obligations is the law chosen by the parties, except where “all other elements relevant to the situation at the time of the choice are located in” another country, in which case the law of that other country shall apply, and subject to overriding mandatory provisions of the *lex fori*.⁷⁰

With respect to the creation of security over a contractual relationship, Article 14(1) of the UK Rome I Regulation provides that the law governing the relationship between assignor and assignee under a voluntary assignment (which term includes outright transfers and the creation of security interests)⁷¹ is governed by the law that applies to the contract of assignment. In the context of the Clearing Agreement, that means that the FCM and the Customer are free to choose the law under which they will create security over the Clearing Agreement. By contrast, the law governing the underlying claim (i.e. the governing law of the Clearing Agreement) determines its assignability, the relationship with the debtor and whether the debtor's obligations have been discharged.⁷² In both cases, we have assumed that the applicable law will be New York law and we assume that there will be no conflict between the Clearing Agreement and the Security Interest. Therefore, the FCM and the Customer are free to choose New York Law as the law creating the Security Interest over the Clearing Agreement and this choice will be recognised by the English courts with regard to matters concerning the relationship between the FCM and the Customer provided that this is permitted by the governing law of the Clearing Agreement (i.e. New York Law).

(ii) Contractual vs. proprietary aspects

It should be noted, however, that Art. 1(1) of the UK Rome I Regulation states that it applies “to contractual obligations in civil and commercial matters”. This has given rise to considerable debate as to the scope of the UK Rome I Regulation with regard to the creation of security, since the transfer of contractual rights has both a contractual and proprietary effect: the transfer of rights under a contract operates to transfer title (a proprietary interest) in a thing in action, being contractual in nature.⁷³

⁷⁰ Art. 3(1) and (3), and Art. 9(2) UK Rome I Regulation.

⁷¹ Art. 14(3) UK Rome I Regulation.

⁷² Art. 14(2) UK Rome I Regulation.

⁷³ There is some debate as to whether the position is put beyond doubt by Recital 38 of the UK Rome I Regulation, which states “[i]n the context of voluntary assignment, the term ‘relationship’ should make it clear that Article 14(1) also applies to the

Specifically, this then gives rise to the question as to the scope of Art. 14(2) of the UK Rome I Regulation, which provides that “[t]he law governing the assigned or subrogated claim shall determine its assignability, the relationship between the assignee and the debtor, the conditions under which the assignment or subrogation can be invoked against the debtor and whether the debtor's obligations have been discharged”.

This matters in particular where the rules governing the validity of transfers differ as between the law governing the contract and other candidates for the applicable law, including the *lex situs* of the asset at the time of the transfer (which may for example be the law of the obligor). Similarly, certain commentators have sought to draw a distinction between questions of liability as between debtor and assignee (being contractual and thus subject to the UK Rome I Regulation), and matters of priority between competing assignments, as well as the effects with regard to “third parties”, such as creditors of an insolvent transferor (being, it is said, “proprietary” and therefore outside the scope of the UK Rome I Regulation).

There is authority to the effect that the law governing the creation of the right assigned also determines the position of the debtor which results from its assignment (and, therefore, also questions of priority between competing assignments).⁷⁴

With regard to the effect on third parties (for example, in the event of multiple purported transfers, or with regard to creditors of an insolvent transferor), a judgment of the European Court of Justice has held that “[a]rticle 14 of [the EU Rome I Regulation] must be interpreted as not designating, directly or by analogy, the applicable law concerning the third-party effects of the assignment of a claim in the event of multiple assignments of the claim by the same creditor to successive assignees”.⁷⁵ Strictly, the decision in the *TeamBank* case related to a scenario of multiple competing assignments; however, its terms are broader and it probably stands as authority to the effect that Art. 14(2) of the UK Rome I Regulation does not extend to “the third-party effects of assignments of claims”.⁷⁶

To the extent that the UK Rome I Regulation is not determinative of the question of the effect on third parties of the creation of security over the Clearing Agreement, it would fall to be determined under the common law. On balance,

property aspects of an assignment, as between assignor and assignee, in legal orders where such aspects are treated separately from the aspects under the law of obligations”. We do not consider this to be determinative of the matter, given the reference to “as between assignor and assignee”, which also tracks the language of Art. 14(1) itself.

⁷⁴ *Raiffeisen Zentralbank Österreich AG v Five Star General Trading LLC* [2001] EWCA Civ 68.

⁷⁵ Case C-548/18 *BGL BNP Paribas SA v TeamBank AG Nürnberg* (the “**TeamBank**” case). This case forms part of domestic law in the UK following Brexit.

⁷⁶ *TeamBank* case, at paragraph 37: “[i]t follows, therefore, that under EU law as it currently stands, the absence of rules of conflict expressly governing the third-party effects of assignments of claims is a choice of the EU legislature.”

the weight of authority⁷⁷ (and leading academic commentary⁷⁸) in our view supports the conclusion that either the law governing the contract or the *lex situs* should apply to determine the “third party effects” of transfers or the creation of security (*viz.* the effects of a purported transfer to multiple transferees, a purported transfer after security has been created or the position of the creditors of an insolvent transferor or chargor in relation to the contract).⁷⁹

In addition, given that the *lex situs* of the Clearing Agreement should, on the basis of our assumptions, be New York law (on account of both the governing law of the Clearing Agreement and the location of the FCM), questions of priority in relation to the taking of security over the Customer's contractual rights against the FCM should nevertheless point to New York law as the applicable law even if the *lex situs* applied under English conflicts of laws rules to determine the applicable law.

(iii) Conclusion in relation to the UK Rome I Regulation

Therefore, whilst the UK Rome I Regulation combined with the English common law provides that the English courts should recognise New York law as effective to create the Security Interest over the Customer's contractual rights against the FCM under the Clearing Agreement, to the extent that the Clearing Agreement gives rise to proprietary rights of the Customer in relation to Charged Assets that are Customer Funds and/or the Customer Transactions, one must look beyond the UK Rome I Regulation to determine whether the English courts would recognise New York law as effective to create the Security Interest over such rights. To the extent, however, that the Customer's claim against the FCM for cash is a purely contractual claim, either the UK Rome I Regulation or the English common law should also apply as described above.

⁷⁷ *Re Queensland Mercantile and Agency Co* [1891] 1 Ch. 536, affirmed [1892] 1 Ch. 219, CA; *Re Maudslay, Sons & Field* [1900] 1 Ch. 602; *Kelly v Selwyn* [1905] 2 Ch. 117. We would note that Guest (cited below) notes at para.10-31 there is “some” authority for the view that the law of the domicile of the assignor and/or assignee applies, although even so Guest concludes that on balance the law governing the claim should apply (cases cited for the view that the former applies include *Lee v Abdy* (1886) 17 Q.B.D. 309, 313, 314; *Republica de Guatemala v Nunez* [1927] 1 K.B. 669; *Re Anziani* [1930] 1 Ch. 407; *Finska Angfartygs Aktiebolaget v Baring Brothers & Co Ltd* (1937) 54 T.L.R. 147, 56 T.L.R. 1222; *Pender v Commercial Bank of Scotland Ltd* 1940 S.L.T. 306).

⁷⁸ *Dicey*, op. cit., para. 25-069; Dr. Ying Khai Liew, *Guest On The Law Of Assignment* (4th Ed., Sweet & Maxwell) at 10-30 to 10-32 (incl.); M. Ooi, *Shares and other Securities in the Conflicts of Laws*, (1st Ed., Oxford University Press, 2003) at 7.127; M. Smith and N. Leslie, *The Law of Assignment* (3rd Ed., Oxford University Press, 2018) at 33.74 *et seq.* (and footnote 147). We note that Ooi and Smith and Leslie were published prior to the *TeamBank* case; however, the reasoning remains in our view persuasive notwithstanding that case.

⁷⁹ There appears to us to be little support in the law as it currently stands for the main alternative, being the law of the residence of the assignor, whereas there is authority against that position: *Kelly v Selwyn* [1905] 2 Ch. 117. Some commentators note that *Le Feuvre v Sullivan* (1855) 10 Moo PC 1 can be interpreted as authority for the law of the residence of the assignor, although that case is ambiguous and equally supports the application of the *lex situs* or the governing law of the claim. We note that certain academic commentators favour the law of the residence of the assignor as producing a more certain outcome, although this would be appear to be to advocate for legislative changes rather than declarative of the current law: see, e.g., Dickinson, A. [2020] L.M.C.L.Q. 198.

5.2.2 FC Regulations

(i) Statutory implementation of PRIMA

In relation to Charged Assets in the form of securities, which we have assumed in paragraph 6.11 of Section I of this Memorandum will comprise “financial collateral” for the purposes of the FC Regulations, a clear answer is provided by the FC Regulations, which provide a form of statutory implementation of the PRIMA (Place of Relevant Intermediary Approach). Regulation 19 of the FC Regulations provides that “where book entry securities collateral is used as collateral under [a financial collateral arrangement] and are held through one or more intermediaries ... the legal nature and proprietary effects of book entry securities collateral ... which is provided under a financial collateral arrangement shall be governed by the domestic law of the country, or territory, or where appropriate, the law of the part of the country or territory, in which the relevant account is maintained”.

(ii) Application to Charged Assets in the form of securities

For these purposes, an “intermediary” means a person that maintains registers or accounts to which financial instruments may be credited or debited, for others or both for others and for its own account, which in our view would include the FCM as provider of the Customer Account. On the assumption that the Charged Assets in the form of Securities will be subject to a security financial collateral arrangement,⁸⁰ the English courts would recognise New York law as effective to determine the proprietary effects of the Security Interest over Charged Assets in the form of securities.

(iii) Application to Charged Assets in the form of cash and Customer Transactions

Charged Assets in the form of cash do not, however, fall within Regulation 19 of the FC Regulations, so it is necessary to consider the position under English common law to the extent that the Customer's claim against the FCM for cash is not a purely contractual claim and includes a proprietary element. Similarly, it is necessary to consider the position under English common law in relation to the Security Interest over the Customer's interest in the Customer Transactions.

5.3 Common law

5.3.1 General principle

In the case of the Customer's proprietary interest in both Charged Assets in the form of cash and Customer Transactions, we understand that such proprietary interest may arise under a trust or, in the absence of a trust, under the UCC (or similar rights under U.S. Federal or state law). Under English common law, the effectiveness of the creation of a security interest over assets held on trust or subject to a similar arrangement (which, on

⁸⁰ See paragraph 6.1.5 of this Section II.

the basis of section X.A.2(i)(1) of the S&C Memorandum, we would consider would extend to the Customer's entitlement under the UCC if such entitlement is not that of a trust) depends upon whether such security interest would be recognised under the law of the *situs* of the arrangement (references in this paragraph 5.3 to "arrangement" are to either a trust or rights under the UCC (or similar rights under U.S. Federal or state law) that are not a trust).

5.3.2 ***Situs* of arrangement**

Under English common law, the *situs* of an arrangement will depend upon whether, under the law of the arrangement, the person entitled to the benefit of the arrangement has a specific property interest in each asset held under the arrangement or a general proprietary interest in all assets subject to the arrangement.⁸¹ If the person entitled to the benefit of the arrangement has an ownership interest in the specific property subject to the arrangement, then the interest under the arrangement is located in the jurisdiction where that property is situated.⁸² If the person entitled to the benefit of the arrangement is given merely a right (including a proprietary right) to claim against the holder of the property subject to the arrangement for the property,⁸³ then the interest under the arrangement is located where the action may be brought, i.e. at the place of residence of the holder of the property.⁸⁴

We provide no opinion in relation to an arrangement, or property subject to an arrangement, to the extent that property subject to such arrangement has a *situs* in a jurisdiction that does not recognise the legal efficacy of such arrangement.

5.3.3 **Application to proprietary interest in Charged Assets in the form of cash**

In the case of the Customer's proprietary interest in Charged Assets in the form of cash where the Customer has a Cash Arrangement or a beneficial interest in the cash in the nature of a U.S. Trust, on the basis of section X.A.2(ii)(2) of the S&C Memorandum and paragraph 1.40 of the Summary Annex, we understand that the Customer does not have a specific ownership interest in the bank accounts in which the FCM may hold any cash that represents such Customer Funds (and, indeed, we understand that there is unlikely to be a direct correlation between cash credited to all Customers' Customer Accounts and cash held by the FCM at its corresponding bank accounts reserved for Customer Funds in the form of cash), so it is clear that the interest under such arrangement is located at the place of business of the FCM.

In the case of the Customer's proprietary interest in Charged Assets in the form of cash where the Customer has a Cash Entitlement, such that the Customer has a specific ownership interest in the bank accounts in which the FCM deposits the Customer Funds

⁸¹ For example, if the Customer can claim a direct property interest in the cash at the bank to which it has been deposited by the FCM, as opposed to only a property right on the occasion of the insolvency of the FCM. An example of the former would be a Cash Entitlement and an example of the latter would be a Cash Arrangement.

⁸² The relevant jurisdiction will therefore be the location of the bank account in which the FCM deposits the Charged Assets in the form of cash.

⁸³ The holder of the property will be the FCM.

⁸⁴ *Dicey, Morris & Collins on the Conflict of Laws* (16th Edition), paragraph 23-046.

in the form of cash, the interest under such arrangement would instead be located at the place of the relevant bank account.

5.3.4 Application to proprietary interest in Customer Transactions

(i) Customer Transactions that are not Foreign Futures

In the case of Customer Transactions that are not Foreign Futures, on the basis of section VI of the S&C Memorandum, we understand that the Customer does not have a specific ownership interest in the Customer Transactions subject to the arrangement but, rather, a beneficial interest in the Customer Transactions and a right to direct the FCM in relation to the dealings in such Customer Transactions, so it is most likely that the interest under the arrangement is located at the place of business of the FCM, although there is a possibility that the interest under the arrangement is located at the place of business of the CCP⁸⁵ at which such Customer Transactions are cleared.

(ii) Customer Transactions that are Foreign Futures

In the case of Customer Transactions that are Foreign Futures, we understand that the arrangement exists over the clearing agreement between the FCM and the clearing member acting for the FCM in respect of the Foreign Futures in respect of all Customer Transactions for all Customers. Therefore, it is even clearer that the interest under the arrangement is located at the place of business of the FCM.

5.3.5 Conclusion in relation to common law analysis

We also take the view that, for a complex arrangement such as a clearing agreement, where it is clear that the *situs* of the arrangement in relation to many assets subject to it is at the place of the business of the FCM, an English court would likely conclude that where there is some uncertainty over the *situs* of the arrangement for some other assets (such as Customer Transactions that are not Foreign Futures and where such *situs* could be in several jurisdictions if the CCPs have their place of business in different U.S. states) a court would likely resolve this uncertainty by concluding that the *situs* of the entire arrangement is at the place of business of the FCM.⁸⁶

⁸⁵ See paragraph 1.11 of the Summary Annex. If the FCM cleared a particular type of fungible contract for only one Customer, it is unclear whether this would confer on that Customer specific proprietary interests in the relevant contract at the DCO. If specific proprietary interests were conferred on that Customer, the interest under the arrangement would be located at the place of business of the DCO, not the FCM. However, this would not be a problem if the law of the relevant U.S. state recognised the effectiveness of the New York law governed security.

⁸⁶ For example, if, as discussed in footnote 85 above, a particular type of fungible contract was cleared for only one Customer, an English court would likely conclude that the interest under the arrangement would still be located at the place of business of the FCM so that the *situs* of the arrangement would not change from the DCO to the FCM if another Customer were to open a position in the relevant type of contract.

5.4 Conclusion

Applying all the analysis above, including the assumptions and qualifications referred to, we are of the view that:

- (i) the FCM and the Customer are free to choose New York law as the law creating the Security Interest over the Customer's non-proprietary contractual rights under the Clearing Agreement and this choice should be recognised by the English courts;
- (ii) the English courts would recognise New York law as effective to create the Security Interest over the Customer's proprietary interest in Charged Assets in the form of securities;
- (iii) the English courts should recognise New York law as the applicable law to determine the effectiveness of the creation of the Security Interest over the Customer's proprietary interest in Charged Assets in the form of cash where the Customer has a beneficial interest in the cash in the nature of a U.S. Trust or a Cash Arrangement;
- (iv) the English courts should recognise the law of the location of the relevant bank account as the applicable law to determine the effectiveness of the creation of the Security Interest over the Customer's proprietary interest in Charged Assets in the form of cash where the Customer has a Cash Entitlement where the Customer has a specific ownership interest in the bank accounts in which the FCM deposits the Customer Funds in the form of cash; and
- (v) the English courts should recognise New York law as the applicable law to determine the effectiveness of the creation of the Security Interest over the Customer's proprietary interest in Customer Transactions, whether or not they are Foreign Futures.

6 Security Interest and Permitted Uses

6.1 Security Interest under the Clearing Agreement

In addition and separate to the establishment of the Agent-Trust and Statutory Arrangement(s), under the terms of the Clearing Agreement, the Customer grants to the FCM a security interest governed by New York law in the Customer's rights and interests in respect of the Charged Assets. Given that the FCM as trustee or otherwise in its capacity as intermediary has legal title to the Charged Assets, we understand that as a matter of New York law the Customer's rights and interest in respect of the Charged Assets will not include legal ownership of the Charged Assets but other contractual and proprietary rights in and in respect of them. See also paragraph 1.4.4 of this Section II.

The Security Interest secures liabilities of the Customer to the FCM that arise in connection with the Customer Agreement. However, we understand that there is little reason for the FCM to enforce the Security Interest, as the manner in which the contractual and trust arrangements are structured under the Clearing Agreement (as described in paragraphs 2.7 and 2.8 of the Summary Annex) entitles the FCM to liquidate the Customer Transactions and deduct amounts to cover liabilities, costs or expenses it has incurred in connection with the Customer Transactions and the liquidation process using its contractual and statutory rights, without any

need to enforce the security interest. That said, we also understand the Security Interest serves the additional purpose in the U.S. of preventing third parties from gaining an intervening interest or otherwise interfering in the Customer Transactions or other property credited to the Customer's accounts, or in the FCM's rights to any proceeds realised from them, including any Statutory Arrangement that is not in the nature of a U.S. Trust. In addition, as discussed in paragraph 4.1 of this Section II, the FCM may wish to make a single Determination of Account across all Account Classes in respect of the Customer Account through the enforcement by the FCM of the Security Interest to discharge liabilities for an Account Class.

As set out in the Summary Annex and discussed in paragraph 3.8 of this Section II, following a Customer's default, the FCM is entitled to enforce the Security Interest, in addition to liquidating the Customer's positions and determining the net amount in respect of which the FCM or Customer will have a duty to account to the other party.⁸⁷

6.1.1 Nature of the Security Interest

The Security Interest is granted in the form of a New York law security interest in favour of the FCM by the Customer. It is therefore necessary to consider whether the Security Interest is effective, as a matter of New York law, to create rights for the FCM which English law would recognise as being in the form of a security interest.

Under English law, as discussed in paragraph 3.6 of this Section II, a security arrangement creates in favour of the collateral-taker a security interest in an asset on terms that the security interest will be discharged once the collateral-provider has performed the collateralised obligation.

We have assumed in paragraph 6.17 of Section I that the Clearing Agreement is effective in order to, and does, create a specific security interest in the Customer's right and interest in the Charged Assets in favour of the FCM as a matter of New York Law. On this basis it is likely that the English courts would consider that the Security Interest creates rights which are in the nature of a security interest as understood under English law. The type of English law security interest which those New York law rights would equate to is beyond the scope of this Memorandum as we do not have any information about the precise terms of the security agreement or arrangement under which the Security Interest is created.⁸⁸

We now consider the effectiveness of the Security Interest.

⁸⁷ However, we understand that this option is not used by the FCM in practice, in preference to using its contractual and statutory rights under the Clearing Agreement to liquidate the Customer Transactions and determine the net entitlement of the Customer. Therefore, we do not examine this in further detail here.

⁸⁸ Under English law, a security interest can be fixed or floating in nature. It is important to note that the fixed or floating characterisation of a security interest does not depend on the terminology used by the parties and will instead depend on the legal characterisation of the arrangement based on the contractual rights and obligations of the parties. The characterisation of a security interest as floating security is likely to be detrimental to the collateral-taker since (contrary to the position in respect of a fixed security interest) its security will rank behind various competing claims on the collateral-provider's insolvency, enforcement may be affected in the event of the collateral-provider entering into administration and in some cases the floating charge can be rendered partly or completely void under the Insolvency Act.

6.1.2 Pre-insolvency enforcement of the Security Interest

If English insolvency proceedings have not been commenced in respect of the Customer, the relevant issue to consider is whether the choice of New York law as the governing law of the Security Interest would be recognised under English law.

As a general principle of English contract law, the parties are (prior to the commencement of insolvency proceedings) free to agree the terms on which they contract, including the circumstances in which one party creates security for the benefit of the other party. If proceedings were brought before the English courts in respect of the Security Interest and New York law is pleaded and proved as a fact in accordance with English procedural and evidential rules, the choice of New York law as the governing law of the Security Interest would be recognised in England and, accordingly, New York law would govern the validity, binding effect and enforceability of the Security Interest. This general principle is subject to the Contractual Foreign Law Exceptions set out in paragraph 2.1.2 of this Section II.

Application of the Contractual Foreign Law Exceptions to the Security Interest

It is necessary to consider whether the Security Interest comes within the scope of the Contractual Foreign Law Exceptions. For the same reasons as set out in paragraph 2.2 of this Section II, the Contractual Foreign Law Exceptions described in paragraphs 2.1.2(i) to 2.1.2(iv) will not apply and it is the Contractual Foreign Law Exceptions in paragraphs 2.1.2(v) and 2.1.2(vi) – that mandatory provisions of English law may override a provision of New York law and that English courts may not apply a provision of New York law that is manifestly incompatible with English public policy – that require the substantive English law analysis.

(i) Public policy override

In respect of the Contractual Foreign Law Exception described in paragraph 2.1.2(v) of this Section II, we do not believe that the Security Interest created under the Clearing Agreement would be manifestly incompatible with English public policy.

(ii) Mandatory provisions of English law

In respect of the Contractual Foreign Law Exception described in paragraph 2.1.2(vi) of this Section II, English law contains certain mandatory registration requirements for “charges” registrable under section 859A of the Companies Act. We think it is probable that the Security Interest would be considered a charge for these purposes and as a result the Security Interest should be registered in accordance with the following requirements of the Companies Act (except to the extent the Security Interest is exclusively over assets that constitute “financial collateral” and the Security Interest constitutes a “financial collateral arrangement”, in each case within the meaning of the FC Regulations, as to which see paragraph 6.1.5 of this Section II):

- (a) a statement of particulars, meeting certain requirements, relating to the charge (in this case, the New York law pledge) created by the Customer must be delivered to the registrar with the applicable registration fee;⁸⁹
- (b) a certified copy of the instrument creating or evidencing the charge must be delivered to the registrar (a copy of the instrument will subsequently be publicly available); and
- (c) the period allowed for delivery of these documents is 21 days beginning with the day after the date the charge was created, unless an order allowing an extended period is made.

If a charge is created and the relevant documents are not delivered to the registrar in the prescribed timeframe and in the prescribed manner the charge will be void (so far as any security on the company's property or undertaking is conferred by it) against a liquidator, administrator or creditor of the company⁹⁰ and the money⁹¹ secured by the charge which is void will become immediately payable.⁹²

6.1.3 Post-insolvency enforcement of the Security Interest

Upon an insolvency of the Customer, it is necessary to consider whether the Security Interest would also be effective as against a liquidator, administrator or creditor of the Customer. Other than the considerations already discussed, relating to the public policy

⁸⁹ In practice, all the information required to be included in the statement of particulars will be delivered to the registrar in a Form MR01.

⁹⁰ Companies Act, section 859H.

⁹¹ The effect of this provision in practice in the context of cleared derivatives is unclear. Section 859H(4) of the Companies Act, by its construction, is restricted to situations in which the charge secures an obligation for the repayment of money. A derivatives transaction may involve the payment of money but it is unlikely to involve the *repayment* of money. This reflects the central case in which registrable charges are used, which is to secure borrowings, and it appears to be these which the draftsman had in mind when constructing the provision. A question then arises as to whether the provision must be construed as having a similar result where a charge secures other payment obligations. A credible argument can be put forward that section 859H(4) should be taken at face value and limited to obligations for the repayment of money. There is an important conceptual difference between an obligation for the repayment of money and the types of obligation that arise under a typical derivatives contract – in the former case, the debt accrues unconditionally (i.e. it is due) as soon as the money has been advanced, even if the money is not payable until a later date. In the case of an obligation to pay money under a derivatives contract, the debt is generally not immediately due but is dependent on something else happening. It therefore makes sense to refer to an obligation for the payment of money immediately becoming payable. The same is not true of an obligation which has not accrued. For such an obligation to become immediately payable not only would the obligation have to be accelerated but any conditions to the accrual of the debt would have to be deemed to be satisfied. This would have profound and unintended consequences on the economics of certain transactions (such as those with obligations subject to a contingency). This interpretation may however be viewed as too restrictive and, indeed, create an odd policy position where security fails for lack of registration to protect creditors of debts that have accrued unconditionally but not anyone else. A court may take a purposive approach and construe the wording in section 859H(4) in such a way that gives protection to the secured creditor in respect of a liability under a derivatives transaction similar to the protection for a debt that has accrued unconditionally, although this would require some creativity by the court. Assuming that liabilities under a derivatives transaction are accelerated in the event of non-registration, there is yet further uncertainty as to what the acceleration of liabilities will actually entail (i.e. exactly which future potential payments are accelerated and how valuations are determined), particularly in the context of a Clearing Agreement which relates to the arrangements between an FCM and a Customer, rather than the derivatives transactions themselves.

⁹² Although it is unclear when the repayment obligation arises, the view taken by many commentators is that the money becomes repayable at the end of the 21 day period as it would defeat the whole purpose of the provision if the chargee had no immediate right to repayment having been deprived of its security.

override and the registration requirements in paragraph 6.1.2 of this Section II, the key consideration is that of a possible moratorium on enforcement action by creditors. However, the analysis in this paragraph 6.1.3 is applicable only to the arrangements in the Clearing Agreement if the Security Interest does not fall within the scope of the FC Regulations. The applicability of the FC Regulations, which creates a beneficial regime for certain types of collateral arrangements, to the Security Interest is analysed in paragraph 6.1.5 of this Section II.

Where the FC Regulations are not applicable, whilst there is no general prohibition on a creditor enforcing its security over the assets of a company in an English liquidation, generally upon an administration of a Customer under English law, any enforcement of security relating to an asset of the Customer would be restricted under English law by the administration moratorium.⁹³

The administration moratorium prevents, except with the consent of the court or the administrator, amongst other things: (i) the passing of any winding-up resolution or making of any winding-up order; (ii) the taking of any steps to enforce any security against the company; and (iii) the commencement or continuance of any legal process against the company or its assets. When deciding whether to give or refuse consent the administrator or the court must balance the interests of the enforcing creditor and the wider requirements of the administration. If enforcement would not prejudice the achievement of the purpose, then it will usually be permitted.

With limited exceptions, the restrictions take effect when the application for an administration order is made, or the notice of intention to appoint an administrator out-of-court by notice is filed, rather than when the appointment is made. Once an administration has commenced the moratorium will continue until the administration is completed. Note that the moratorium does not in fact affect the substantive rights of the parties. The legal right of the secured party to enforce their security, and the causes of action based on such rights, remain vested in the secured party. The secured party is just not at liberty to enforce those rights during the administration.⁹⁴

6.1.4 Application of the FC Regulations

However, to the extent the FC Regulations are determined to be applicable to the Security Interest, they would override the registration requirements set out in paragraph 6.1.2 of this Section II and the statutory provisions which prevent the enforcement of security interests when a company is subject to an administration moratorium.

For the FC Regulations to apply to the Security Interest, the arrangements must constitute a “title transfer financial collateral arrangement” or a “security financial collateral arrangement” under the FC Regulations.

⁹³ The relevant statutory provisions relating to the administration moratorium are set out in Schedule B1 of the Insolvency Act as supplemented by Part 3 of the Insolvency (England and Wales) Rules 2016 (SI 2016/1024).

⁹⁴ If the security is a floating charge (in respect of which please see our discussion on this point in footnote 88), the administrator may sell the assets subject to the floating charge but the secured party will retain the same security over the proceeds of the sale.

As set out in the Summary Annex and as discussed in paragraph 6.1.1 of this Section II, we understand that pursuant to the terms of the Clearing Agreement a security interest (in the form of a New York security interest) is created over the Charged Assets, which includes the Customer Transactions. The analysis in paragraph 6.1.5 of this Section II only considers whether the Security Interest may constitute a “security financial collateral arrangement” within the meaning of the FC Regulations.

6.1.5 Analysis of FC Regulations

(i) Definition of “security financial collateral arrangement”

A “security financial collateral arrangement” is defined in Regulation 3 of the FC Regulations as being:

“an agreement or arrangement, evidenced in writing, where:

- (a) the purpose of the agreement or arrangement is to secure the relevant financial obligations owed to the collateral-taker;*
- (b) the collateral-provider creates or there arises a security interest in financial collateral to secure those obligations;*
- (c) the financial collateral is delivered, transferred, held, registered or otherwise designated so as to be in the possession or under the control of the collateral-taker or a person acting on its behalf; any right of the collateral-provider to substitute financial collateral of the same or greater value or withdraw excess financial collateral or to collect the proceeds of credit claims until further notice shall not prevent the financial collateral being in the possession or under the control of the collateral-taker; and*
- (d) the collateral-provider and the collateral-taker are both non-natural persons.”*

In order for the Security Interest to be a “security financial collateral arrangement”, it must therefore satisfy all elements of the definition set out above. We consider paragraph (b) of this definition below.

(ii) Security interest in financial collateral

The collateral-provider (i.e. the Customer) must create, or there must arise, a “security interest” in “financial collateral”. Taking each of these requirements in turn:

- (a) A “security interest” is defined in Regulation 3 of the FC Regulations as:

“any legal or equitable interest or any right in security ... created or otherwise arising by way of security including –

- (a) a pledge;*
- (b) a mortgage;*

- (c) *a fixed charge;*
 - (d) *a charge created as a floating charge ... ; or*
 - (e) *a lien”.*
- (b) The security interest must be over “financial collateral”. The FC Regulations define “financial collateral” as “*cash, financial instruments or credit claims*” where “*financial instruments*” are in turn defined as:
- (a) *“shares in companies and other securities equivalent to shares in companies;*
 - (b) *bonds and other forms of instruments giving rise to or acknowledging indebtedness if these are tradeable on the capital market; and*
 - (c) *any other securities which are normally dealt in and which give the right to acquire such shares, bonds, instruments or other securities by subscription, purchase or exchange or which give rise to a cash settlement (excluding instruments of payments);*

and includes units of a collective investment scheme within the meaning of the Financial Services and Markets Act 2000, eligible debt securities within the meaning of the Uncertificated Securities Regulations 2001, money market instruments, claims relating to or rights in or in respect of any of the financial instruments included in this definition and any rights, privileges or benefits attached to or arising from any such financial instruments”.

Prima facie, the cash and securities comprising the Statutory Property contemplated by our assumptions in paragraphs 6.11 and 6.12 of Section I will constitute ‘financial collateral’. However, it is a question of fact whether any particular debt obligations are ‘tradeable on the capital market’.

(iii) Application to the Security Interest

(a) *Customer Transactions*

Rights in respect of contracts (such as the Customer Transactions) are not included within the definition of “financial collateral”. Therefore, the Security Interest in respect of Customer Transactions will not amount to a “security financial collateral arrangement” as defined in Regulation 3 of the FC Regulations.

(b) *Charged Assets in the form of securities*

We have assumed (as noted in paragraph 6.11 of Section I of this Memorandum) that the securities comprising the Charged Assets are

“financial instruments” of the types described in paragraph 6.1.5(ii)(b) of this Section II, which may include certain shares which the Customer holds in other companies or certain debt securities.

As noted in paragraph 6.1.1 of this Section II, we have assumed that the Security Interest is over the Customer's rights and interest in the Charged Assets (and have not investigated the nature of such rights and interest) as opposed to the Charged Assets themselves. Rights and interests over securities may still constitute a “financial instrument” nonetheless, since the definition of “financial instruments” includes “*claims relating to or rights in or in respect of*” any of the financial instruments included in the definition, which would include financial instruments that are held on trust or under a “security entitlement” under Article 8 of the UCC (or similar rights under U.S. Federal or state law). We also note that the definition of “financial instruments” is broad, and includes shares in companies and any instruments giving rise to or acknowledging indebtedness (which in our opinion would also include debt securities, assuming they are tradeable on the capital markets).

(c) *Charged Assets in the form of cash*

Although “cash” is not included in the definition of financial instruments so that it does not benefit from the inclusion of “*claims relating to or rights in or in respect of*” in the definition of financial instruments, cash by its very nature necessarily presupposes an entitlement to a claim or rights in respect of money, so we are of the view that, whether the Customer's rights and interest in cash that comprises the Charged Assets are recognised as a trust or other proprietary arrangement under U.S. Federal or state law or they amount to a contractual claim for the cash, in each case the Charged Assets that comprise cash fall within the definition of “financial collateral”.

Notwithstanding that part of the assets secured by the Security Interest may constitute financial collateral, if some assets do not and a single security interest is created over the entire pool of assets, the Security Interest may not constitute a “security financial collateral arrangement” under the FC Regulations unless it is clear that the security can be severed into separate security arrangements, one constituting a security financial collateral arrangement and the other not.⁹⁵

In conclusion, the Security Interest over Customer Transactions will not amount to a security financial collateral arrangement but if all requirements set out in

⁹⁵ It is inherent from paragraph (b) of “security financial collateral arrangement” that a security interest is only capable of constituting such an arrangement where (leaving aside the various other requirements) it is over “financial collateral”. It does not necessarily follow from this requirement that a single agreement cannot contain a combination of arrangements, where one of them is a “security financial collateral arrangement” and the others are not. However, if a single agreement is to contain a combination of arrangements, it is necessary that the arrangement which is intended to be a “security financial collateral arrangement” is either fully segregated from or legally capable of being severable from the other arrangements so that a court can determine which security constitutes a security financial collateral arrangement and which does not.

paragraph 6.1.5(i) of this Section II are satisfied, the Security Interest over Charged Assets comprising cash and securities will amount to a security financial collateral arrangement.

(iv) Registration

Although it may be possible to include separate security arrangements in the Clearing Agreement – one, over Charged Assets comprising cash and securities, which may constitute a security financial collateral arrangement, and one over the Customer Transactions, which is not a security financial collateral arrangement (and therefore registrable) – the entire Clearing Agreement would nonetheless be registrable⁹⁶ (as a result of the security arrangement over the Customer Transactions being registrable)⁹⁷ and thereby publicly available. In order to avoid the Clearing Agreement becoming publicly available, the registrable charge in respect of the Customer Transactions would need to be set out in a charging document separate to the Clearing Agreement. Only this separate charging document would in that case be publicly available following registration and not the entire Clearing Agreement (on the assumption that the charge over the Charged Assets comprising cash and securities satisfies the other requirements of a security financial collateral arrangement). Any enforcement of the registrable charge would, as discussed in paragraph 6.1.3 of this Section II, be subject to the administration moratorium.

6.2 Enforceability of the provisions permitting withdrawals for Permitted Uses and Proprietary Uses⁹⁸

6.2.1 Enforceability pre-insolvency

Withdrawals for both Permitted Uses and Proprietary Uses, discussed in paragraphs 3.8.3 to 3.8.9 of this Section II, form part of the arrangements under the Clearing Agreement, in respect of which we have already discussed the Trust Foreign Law Exceptions in paragraph 3.5 of this Section II. The only additional mandatory provision of English law which needs to be considered in this context is whether the mandatory registration requirements of the Companies Act (as are discussed in the context of the Security Interest in paragraph 6.1 of this Section II) apply to them. As discussed in

⁹⁶ The Companies Act provides that the company creating the charge or any person interested in the charge may make the registration. In practice, the chargee typically makes the registration, as the adverse effects of a failure to register the charge (mainly, that the charge is rendered void) falls primarily upon the chargee. It is important to note however, that if the chargee fails to register the charge or elects not to register it, this does not absolve the chargor of the need to register the charge if this is required by the documentation it has entered into in connection with the charge.

⁹⁷ For the avoidance of doubt, the fact that the entire Clearing Agreement is “registrable” does not mean that its non-registration would necessarily result in the security being void in respect of both the (i) Charged Assets comprising cash and securities and (ii) Customer Transactions. If the grant of a security interest over assets that constitute financial collateral (such that it constitutes a “security financial collateral arrangement”) is legally severable or clearly drafted to be separate from the grant of security over non-financial collateral, such that a court can clearly distinguish between the two, then only the security arrangement in respect of non-financial collateral may be void.

⁹⁸ Our analysis in this paragraph 6.2 of Section II is given in respect of a U.S. Trust only. We provide no opinion regarding Permitted Uses and Proprietary Uses where the relevant U.S. Trust is not recognised as a valid trust under U.S. Federal or state law (see paragraph 1.4.2 of this Section II).

paragraphs 3.8.3 to 3.8.9 of this Section II and based on the assumptions and reasoning therein, in our view, neither Permitted Uses nor Proprietary Uses would be considered under English law as a form of security interest and so would not be subject to the mandatory security registration requirements.

6.2.2 Enforceability post-insolvency

Upon an insolvency of the Customer, it is necessary to consider whether the enforceability of the provisions permitting withdrawals for Permitted Uses and Proprietary Uses would be affected by the General Insolvency Provisions and the Statutory Avoidance Provisions. The analysis in paragraph 4 of this Section II already considers these issues, where relevant, in respect of Permitted Uses and Proprietary Uses where they arise under a U.S. Trust. Similar to the Security Interest, an additional consideration is whether their enforcement by the FCM would be prohibited under English law by an administration moratorium. The effect of an administration moratorium is discussed in paragraph 6.1.3 of this Section II. An administration moratorium will only prevent their enforcement if the steps taken by an FCM following a Customer default described in paragraph 3.8 of this Section II are determined to be the “taking of steps to enforce security”. The Insolvency Act defines “security” as “any mortgage, charge, lien or other security”. As discussed in paragraphs 3.8.3 to 3.8.9 of this Section II and based on the assumptions and reasoning therein, neither Permitted Uses nor Proprietary Uses would be considered under English law as a form of security interest and so would not be subject to the administration moratorium.

7 Operation of the U.S. Clearing Model under English law

On the basis of the analysis in paragraphs 3 to 6 of this Section II and assuming that the Agent-Trust and a U.S. Trust are valid, binding and recognised under New York law, there is no reason⁹⁹ so far as English law is concerned why, in any action in the English courts where New York law as the governing law of the Agent-Trust or U.S. Federal law as the governing law of a U.S. Trust are pleaded and proved, the efficacy of the Agent-Trust and a U.S. Trust would not be recognised both before and after the commencement of insolvency proceedings in respect of the Customer.¹⁰⁰ As a consequence and on the assumption that New York law and U.S. Federal law so provide and subject to the assumptions, qualifications and reasoning elsewhere in this Memorandum:

- (i) English law should not affect the right of the FCM as a trustee and as a contractual counterparty to the Customer to deal with the Agent-Trust Property and U.S. Trust Property in accordance with the contractual and trust arrangements agreed (or implied) between the FCM and a Customer and/or as specified by statute, as described in the Summary Annex;

⁹⁹ This statement is made on the assumption that Permitted and Non-Permitted Uses would not be considered under English law as a form of security interest, as to which, see our discussion in paragraphs 3.8 and 6.2 of this Section II.

¹⁰⁰ The statements in this sentence and those in sub-paragraphs (i) to (v) below are made in respect of a U.S. Trust only, as other Statutory Arrangements that are not recognised as a valid trust under U.S. Federal or state law (see paragraph 1.4.2 of this Section II) are outside the scope of certain paragraphs of this Section II.

- (ii) the assets held by the FCM in the omnibus customer positions account, the Customer Account, the Segregated Funds Account and the Separate Accounts and the liabilities incurred by the FCM in the course of performing its obligations or exercising its rights under the Clearing Agreement will not be treated under English law as assets or liabilities of the Customer, but as assets and liabilities of the FCM in its capacity as agent-trustee or trustee (as the case may be)¹⁰¹ that (in the case of assets) are ultimately held on trust for the Customer under the terms of the Agent-Trust and for the Customer and the FCM (to the extent of the Residual Interest) under the terms of a U.S. Trust;
- (iii) English law should not affect the various methods by which an FCM can bring about a Position Liquidation and Margin Liquidation, as set out in paragraphs 2.7 and 2.8 of the Summary Annex;
- (iv) save as noted in paragraphs 4.1.11(ii) and (iii) of this Section II, English law should not affect the Determination of Account, pursuant to which, following a Position Liquidation and Margin Liquidation, a single net amount is determined by the FCM after the deduction of any costs and expenses that are incurred in connection with the liquidation of Customer Transactions or during the course of acting as the Customer's FCM and that are permitted by the segregation rules and separate account rules within an Account Class. Such single net amount is reflected in the balance of the Customer Account and represents the Net Liquidating Equity that is the Customer's net entitlement under the Clearing Agreement; and
- (v) English law should not affect the exercise by the FCM of its rights in respect of Permitted Uses and Proprietary Uses with respect to the U.S. Trust Property.

Further, assuming that the Security Interest is valid, binding and recognised under New York law and that any Security Interest that is not a security financial collateral arrangement has been registered as required under the Companies Act, in any action in the English courts where New York law as the governing law of the Security Interest is pleaded and proved, English law would recognise the efficacy of the Security Interest both before and after the commencement of insolvency proceedings in respect of the Customer.

¹⁰¹ However, we note that liabilities incurred by the FCM in its capacity as agent-trustee or trustee are not limited in recourse to the Agent-Trust Property and Statutory Property.

III. Issues

In this Section III we address the questions contained in your Instructions. Each question is set out in italics followed by our response.

The definitions for the following terms used in this Section III are below:

“CDA” means an addendum for Cleared Derivatives Transactions in the form published by FIA and ISDA in 2012 or 2018;

“Covered Agreement” means the Clearing Agreement as defined in Section I of this Memorandum;

“Covered Collateral” means the Covered Customer’s collateral consisting of (i) the Customer Account, (ii) the Covered Customer’s Covered Contracts, (iii) cash credited to an account (as opposed to physical notes and coins) and (iv) Covered Securities that are located or are deemed located either (A) in England and Wales or (B) outside England and Wales;

“Covered Contract” means the types of transactions that may be cleared for the Customer pursuant to the Clearing Agreement, including US Futures, Foreign Futures and Cleared Swaps;

“Covered Customer” means a customer of the FCM which has entered into a Clearing Agreement with the FCM and is an entity type that is within the scope of this Memorandum, as set out in paragraph 4 of Section I of this Memorandum; and

“Covered Securities” means corporate debt securities or debt securities issued by the government of Belgium, Canada, France, Germany, Italy, Japan, the Netherlands, Sweden, Switzerland, the United Kingdom, or the United States, in each case (a) denominated in any freely convertible currency and (b) held in one of the following forms:

- (i) directly held bearer debt securities, meaning debt securities issued in bearer form and held directly in this form by the FCM;
- (ii) directly held registered debt securities, meaning debt securities issued in registered form and held directly in this form by the FCM so that the FCM is shown as the relevant holder in the register for such securities;
- (iii) directly held dematerialised debt securities, meaning debt securities issued in dematerialised form and held directly in this form by the FCM so that the FCM is shown as the relevant holder in the electronic register for such securities; or
- (iv) intermediated debt securities, meaning a form of interest in debt securities recorded in fungible book-entry form in an account maintained by a financial intermediary (which could be a central securities depository or a custodian, nominee or other form of financial intermediary) in the name of the FCM where such interest has been credited to the account of the FCM.

1 Position Liquidation, Margin Liquidation and Determination of Account

We have only been asked to answer the questions under this paragraph 1 of Section III on the assumption that an Agent-Trust and a U.S. Trust arise under the Clearing Agreement and by operation of the Customer Property Rules. Therefore, with your agreement, we do not answer the questions under this paragraph 1 of Section III in the absence of a trust.

1.1 *Would the parties' agreement on governing law and submission to jurisdiction set out in each of the Base Account Agreement and CDA be given effect by a court in your jurisdiction, and what would be the consequences if they were not?*

Please see our discussion in respect of this point in paragraphs 2.2 and 3.5 of Section II above.

If the parties' agreement on the governing law and their submission to jurisdiction were not upheld (although we believe it would), the Base Account Agreement and CDA would be examined on the basis of the law determined to be most applicable by an English court.

1.2 *Would the Position Liquidation provisions of each of the Base Account Agreement and the CDA be enforceable under the laws of your jurisdiction and each of the Position Liquidation methods described in section XI of the S&C Memorandum and paragraph 2.4 of the Summary Annex be recognized and upheld by a court in your jurisdiction? If a particular method would either not be upheld or may be challenged, please provide further detail and explain the reason for this.*

Yes, subject to and as discussed in Section II above, on the basis that the Agent-Trust and U.S. Trust would be recognised under English law as trusts and New York law (in the case of the Agent-Trust) or U.S. Federal law (in the case of the Statutory Arrangement(s)) would govern the validity, interpretation and effect of the trusts, the liquidation methods set out in paragraph 2.4 of the Summary Annex as supplemented by paragraphs 2.5 to 2.8 of the Summary Annex would be recognised and upheld by English courts.

1.3 *Would the FCM's holding of the Covered Contracts as an "agent-trustee" be recognized by a court in your jurisdiction as creating a valid trust over the Covered Contracts or would the court otherwise recognize the FCM's legal title to, and the Covered Customer's beneficial interest in, the Covered Contracts?*

Yes, subject to and as discussed in Section II above, English law would recognise and characterise the Agent-Trust as a trust as a matter of English law over the Covered Contracts.

On the assumption that as a matter of New York law a Covered Customer has a beneficial interest in respect of the Agent-Trust Property as a whole (i.e. the Covered Customer's beneficial interest in the Agent-Trust Property is an interest in a proportionate share of each asset constituting the Agent-Trust Property) or the Covered Customer has multiple *pro rata* beneficial interests in only subsets of the Agent-Trust Property reflecting the Customer Transactions cleared by the FCM for that Customer and, in either case, not in any specific asset that may at a particular point in time constitute part of the Agent-Trust Property, this will be recognised under English law, which would not treat the Covered Customer as having an ownership right in any

specific item of the Agent-Trust Property outright. Furthermore, English law recognises that the assets constituting trust property may change from time to time.

1.3.1 *If so, would the court characterize Position Liquidation as the FCM's exercising its contractual rights as principal vis-à-vis the DCO under the relevant DCO rules (or vis-à-vis the Foreign Futures Broker under the clearing agreement between the FCM and Foreign Futures Broker) and not as the FCM's acting as the Covered Customer's agent or as the FCM's enforcing its security interest in the Covered Contracts?*

Yes, as set out in paragraph 7 of Section II (and subject to the discussion in Section II), there is no reason so far as English law is concerned why, in any action in the English courts where New York law as the governing law of the Agent-Trust is pleaded and proved, the efficacy of the Agent-Trust would not be recognised both before and after the commencement of insolvency proceedings in respect of the Covered Customer, including in respect of the enforceability of the Position Liquidation provisions. Assuming that applicable U.S. law would not characterise the FCM as acting as agent of the Covered Customer (as opposed to an agent-trustee), English law would not so characterise the FCM.

1.3.2 *Could the FCM's holding of the Covered Customer's Contracts be characterized as some alternative arrangement, such as a commission agency or as a collateral security arrangement? If so, how would the FCM's Position Liquidation be characterized under the laws of your jurisdiction?*

Please see our discussion on this point in paragraphs 3.6, 3.7 and 3.8 of Section II above.

1.4 *Would a court in your jurisdiction recognize the statutory trust with respect to the Segregated Funds or Separate Account Funds of each Account Class as creating a valid trust over such Segregated Funds or Separate Account Funds, and that under the terms of that trust, the FCM holds the legal title to, and the Covered Customer holds a beneficial interest in, the statutory trust as a whole (as opposed to maintaining an interest in any specific assets under the trust)? Could the statutory trust with respect to the Segregated Funds or Separate Account Funds of any Account Class be characterized as some alternative arrangement (e.g., as a collateral security arrangement)?*

On the assumption that the Statutory Arrangement in respect of each Account Class was in the form of a U.S. Trust and so recognised as a matter of U.S. Federal or state law, yes, subject to and as discussed in Section II above, English law would recognise and characterise the Statutory Arrangements as a trust as a matter of English law over the Segregated Funds or Separate Account Funds (as applicable), where the FCM acts as trustee and the Covered Customer as beneficiary.

On the assumption that the Statutory Arrangement in respect of each Account Class was in the form of a U.S. Trust and so recognised as a trust as a matter of U.S. Federal or state law, in our view the Statutory Arrangements would be characterised as a trust rather than as a security interest under English law, as discussed in paragraph 3.8 of Section II above.

- 1.4.1 ***Would the Margin Liquidation provisions of each of the Base Account Agreement and CDA be enforceable under the laws of your jurisdiction and the FCM's Margin Liquidation in respect of each Account Class be recognized and upheld by a court in your jurisdiction? Could such Margin Liquidation be capable of exercise based on the FCM's exercise of its right under the applicable Customer Property Rules to withdraw and apply Segregated Funds or Separate Account Funds, as the case may be, for Permitted Uses (the FCM's "Permitted Uses Rights") rather than by the enforcement of its security interest in the Covered Customer's Collateral consisting of securities?***

As set out in paragraph 7 of Section II (and subject to the discussion in Section II), there is no reason so far as English law is concerned why, in any action in the English courts where U.S. Federal law as the governing law of the Statutory Arrangement(s) in the form of a U.S. Trust is pleaded and proved, the efficacy of such Statutory Arrangement(s) would not be recognised both before and after the commencement of insolvency proceedings in respect of the Covered Customer, including in respect of the enforceability of the Margin Liquidation provisions, Permitted Uses Rights and the operation of the Determination of Account.

- 1.4.2 ***Would the Determination of Account provisions of each of the Base Account Agreement and CDA be enforceable under the laws of your jurisdiction and the FCM's Determination of Account in respect of (i) each Account Class and (ii) all Account Classes on a combined basis be recognized and upheld by a court in your jurisdiction and if so, how could each Determination of Account be characterized (e.g., contractual accounting, netting or set-off, enforcement of the security interest in cash Collateral or some combination of the foregoing)?***

Yes on the basis of our analysis, and subject to the qualifications, in paragraph 4.1 of Section II above.

- 1.5 ***Are there any other circumstances in your jurisdiction, including any moratorium, stay, freeze or other consequence of the commencement of an insolvency proceeding, you can foresee that might affect the FCM's ability to exercise Position Liquidation, Margin Liquidation or a Determination of Account in respect of an Account Class or the overall Customer Account (comprising the three Account Classes)?***

Please see our discussion on this point in paragraphs 4 and 6 of Section II above.

- 1.6 ***Under the laws of your jurisdiction, are any rights or processes available to a creditor of a Covered Customer by which such creditor could make a claim against the Segregated Funds or Separate Account Funds held subject to the statutory trust (or otherwise in accordance with the Customer Property Rules) in respect of each Account Class or against the Covered Contracts (and any rights in respect thereof) held by the FCM as agent-trustee for the benefit of the Covered Customer and the FCM's other customers in such Account Class as opposed to only having recourse to the final cash balance or single net termination amount that constitutes the Determination of Account for such Account Class or the overall Customer Account (comprising the three Account Classes)?***

No, on the assumption that as a matter of New York law a Covered Customer's beneficial interest in respect of the Agent-Trust Property is in the Agent-Trust Property as a whole (i.e. the Covered Customer's beneficial interest in the Agent-Trust Property is an interest in a proportionate share of each asset constituting the Agent-Trust Property) or the Covered Customer has multiple *pro rata* beneficial interests in only subsets of the Agent-Trust Property reflecting the Customer Transactions cleared by the FCM for that Customer and, in either case, not in any specific asset that may at a particular point in time constitute part of the Agent-Trust Property, this will be recognised under English law, which would not treat the Covered Customer as having an ownership right in any specific item of the Agent-Trust Property outright. Likewise, on the assumption that the Covered Customer's entitlement to the Statutory Property is limited to the Net Liquidating Equity such that it does not have a direct, unconditional ownership interest in specific items of Statutory Property, this will also be recognised under English law, which would not treat the Covered Customer as having an ownership right in any specific item of the Statutory Property outright. As a result, the English courts would recognise the New York law position that a creditor of a Covered Customer will only be entitled to claim against the single net amount that constitutes the Determination of Account and not any specific asset that may constitute the relevant Agent-Trust Property or U.S. Trust. Please also see our analysis in paragraph 4.1 of Section II above in relation to the single Determination of Account.

1.7 *Assuming the parties have entered into a Covered Agreement, the Covered Customer is insolvent and the FCM has determined a lump-sum cash balance or net termination amount in a currency other than the currency of the jurisdiction in which the insolvent customer is organized:*

1.7.1 *Would a court in your jurisdiction enforce a claim for the cash balance or net termination amount in the currency in which it was determined?*

1.7.2 *Can a claim for the net termination amount be proved in insolvency proceedings in your jurisdiction without conversion into the local currency?*

If in either case the claim must be converted to local currency for purposes of enforcement or proof in insolvency proceedings, please set out the rules governing the timing and exchange rate for such conversion.

Please see our discussion on this point in paragraph 4.3 of Section II above.

1.8 *Are there any other local law considerations that you would recommend the FCM to consider in connection with the exercise of Position Liquidation, Margin Liquidation or a Determination of Account?*

No, subject to the discussion set out in Section II above.

In addition, we would recommend that in the event of a Covered Customer default, the FCM rely on and exercise the Position Liquidation and Margin Liquidation provisions in preference to enforcing the Security Interest. As discussed in paragraph 6.1.3 of Section II above, in respect of a security interest which does not fall within the scope of the FC Regulations, whilst there is no general prohibition on a creditor enforcing its security over the assets of a company in an English liquidation, generally upon an administration of an English Customer, any enforcement

of security relating to an asset of the Covered Customer would be restricted under English law by the administration moratorium, unless the security is a security financial collateral arrangement, in respect of which, see paragraphs 6.1.4 and 6.1.5. There is no similar restriction that would be applicable in respect of the exercise of the Position Liquidation and Margin Liquidation provisions.

We also advise that an FCM seeking to make a single Determination of Account across all Account Classes in respect of the Customer Account does not rely on set-off in order to avoid a set-off that is invalid due to inconsistency with the mandatory insolvency set-off rules (please see our discussion in paragraph 4.1.6 of Section II).

2 Creation, Perfection and Enforcement of FCM's Security Interest in Covered Collateral

We have been asked to answer the questions under this paragraph 2 of Section III on the basis that the Charged Assets, over which the Covered Customer has granted the Security Interest in favour of the FCM, are as described in paragraphs 1.4.4, 6.1 and 6.1.1 of Section II of this Memorandum and, specifically, that the Covered Customer does not create the Security Interest over its beneficial interest in a U.S. Trust.

2.1 *Under the laws of your jurisdiction, what law governs the contractual aspects of the security interest in the various forms of Covered Collateral?*

Please see our discussion on this point in paragraphs 5.4 and 6.1.2 of Section II above.

2.2 *Under the laws of your jurisdiction, what law governs the proprietary aspects of the security interest in the different types of Covered Collateral (that is, the formalities required to protect the security interest against competing claims) granted by the Covered Customer (for example, the law of the jurisdiction of incorporation or organization of the Covered Customer, the jurisdiction where the Covered Collateral is Located or the jurisdiction of location of the FCM as the Covered Customer's Intermediary, in relation to Covered Collateral in the form of indirectly held securities)? What factors would be relevant to this question? If the Location (or deemed Location) of the Covered Collateral is the determining factor, please briefly describe the principles governing such determination under the law of your jurisdiction with respect to the different types of Covered Collateral. If relevant, please describe how the laws of your jurisdiction apply to each form in which securities Covered Collateral may be held as described in Additional Assumption II.B.b in the Instructions.*

Please see our discussion on this point in paragraphs 5, 6.1.2(ii) and 6.1.5 of Section II above.

2.3 *Would the courts of your jurisdiction recognize the validity of a security interest in the different types of Covered Collateral, assuming it is valid under New York law? In answering this question, please bear in mind the different forms in which securities Covered Collateral may be held. Please indicate, in relation to cash Covered Collateral, if*

your answer depends on the location of the account in which the relevant deposit obligations are recorded and/or upon the currency of those obligations.

Please see our discussion on this point in paragraphs 5 and 6.1.2 of Section II above.

2.4 *What is the effect, if any, under the laws of your jurisdiction of the fact that the amount secured or the amount of any cash or securities Covered Collateral subject to the security interest will fluctuate under the Covered Agreement (including as a result of entering into additional Covered Transactions from time to time)? In particular:*

- (a) Would the security interest be valid in relation to future obligations of the Covered Customer?***
- (b) Would the security interest be valid in relation to future Covered Collateral (that is, Covered Collateral not yet delivered to the FCM at the time of entry into the Covered Agreement)?***
- (c) Is there any difficulty with the concept of creating the security interest over a fluctuating pool of assets, for example, by reason of the impossibility of identifying in the Covered Agreement the specific assets deposited by the Covered Customer with the FCM?***
- (d) Is it necessary under the laws of your jurisdiction for the amount secured by the security interest to be a fixed amount or subject to a fixed maximum amount?***
- (e) Is it permissible under the laws of your jurisdiction for the FCM to hold Customer Collateral in excess of its actual exposure to the Covered Customer under the Covered Agreement?***

In relation to (a), it is understood that the security interest in any specific Covered Collateral would only be relevant in relation to future obligations, if ever, at the time such future obligations arise and then only in relation to Covered Collateral held at that time. This question concerns whether it would be necessary for either party to perform any action at such time in order to ensure the effectiveness of the security interest as security for such obligations or whether the security interest would take effect in relation to those future obligations without further action by either party.

In relation to (b), it is understood that the security interest in the different types of Covered Collateral to be delivered at some point in the future after the time of entry into the Covered Agreement would not take effect in relation to such Covered Collateral until it had been delivered to the FCM in accordance with the Covered Agreement. This question concerns whether it would be necessary for either party to perform any action at such time in order to ensure the effectiveness of the security interest in relation to such Covered Collateral or whether the security interest in relation to such Covered Collateral would take effect without further action (other than the delivery) by either party.

In relation to (c), you may assume that each specific delivery to the FCM and return by the FCM of Covered Collateral consisting of cash or securities under the Covered Agreement from time to time would be properly recorded by the FCM, so that, while the

pool of Collateral would change from time to time, at any specific time the composition of the pool of Collateral could be clearly identified by the FCM.

- (a) It is possible under English law to create a security interest in relation to future obligations.
- (b) It is possible under English law to have security that is effective upon delivery of assets into the security arrangement.
- (c) No. However, depending on the level of control the FCM has, the security interest could be characterised as a floating charge, rather than as a fixed charge (please see our discussion on this point in footnote 88).
- (d) No, subject that, as stated in the definition of a “security financial collateral arrangement”, *“any right of the collateral-provider to...withdraw excess financial collateral...shall not prevent the financial collateral being in the possession or under the control of the collateral-taker”*. A right that goes beyond this may mean the financial collateral is not under the control of the collateral-taker and so the arrangement may then not constitute a security financial collateral arrangement.
- (e) Yes, it is permissible under English law.

We do not consider any of features of the Security Interest set out in sub-paragraphs (a) to (e) to be either: (i) inconsistent with the characterisation of the Security Interest as creating rights which are in the nature of a security interest as understood under English law; or (ii) contrary to public policy or other mandatory provisions of English law. Please see our discussion on these points in paragraph 6.1.1 of Section II above. However, our answer to this question 2.4 is given on the assumption that the Security Interest is not characterised as a floating charge (please see our discussion on this point in footnote 88) and on the basis of our assumptions in paragraphs 6.11 and 6.17 of Section I above.

2.5 *Assuming that the courts of your jurisdiction would recognize the security interest in each type of Covered Collateral, is any action (filing, registration, notification, stamping, notarization or any other action or the obtaining of any governmental, judicial, regulatory or other order, consent or approval) required in your jurisdiction to perfect the security interest? If so, please indicate what actions must be taken and how such actions may differ, if at all, depending upon the type of Covered Collateral which is subject to the security interest.*

Please see our discussion on this point in paragraphs 6.1.2(ii), 6.1.4 and 6.1.5 of Section II above.

2.6 *If there are any other requirements to ensure the validity or perfection of the security interest in each type of Covered Collateral, please indicate the nature of such requirements. Are there any other documentary formalities that must be observed in*

order for the security interest in any type of Covered Collateral to be recognized as valid and perfected in your jurisdiction?

Please see our discussion on this point in paragraphs 6.1.2(ii), 6.1.4 and 6.1.5 of Section II above.

2.7 Assuming that the FCM has obtained a valid and perfected security interest under the laws of your jurisdiction, to the extent such laws apply, by complying with the requirements set forth in your responses to questions 2.1 to 2.6 above, as applicable, will the FCM or the Covered Customer need to take any action thereafter to ensure that the security interest continues to be and/or remains perfected, particularly with respect to additional cash or securities Covered Collateral transferred from time to time when required pursuant to the Covered Agreement?

On the assumption that the Security Interest is valid and perfected under New York law, please see our answers to questions 2.1 to 2.6 above as to how the Security Interest may be impacted under English law.

2.8 Are there any particular duties, obligations or limitations imposed on the FCM in relation to the care of the Covered Collateral held by it pursuant to the security interest?

English law does not impose particular duties, obligations or limitations in relation to the care of the property subject to a foreign law security interest, but that unusual rights, such as the ability to appropriate the property without accounting for its value or deal in a manner that is inconsistent with the security provider having an equity of redemption in the property may impact the characterisation of the arrangement as one of security.

2.9 Do the laws of your jurisdiction recognize the right of the FCM to use cash or securities Covered Collateral (as described in Additional Assumption II.B.(f) in the Instructions) pursuant to an agreement with the Covered Customer? In particular, how does such use of the Covered Collateral affect, if at all, the validity, continuity, perfection or priority of the security interest otherwise validly created and perfected prior to such use? Are there any other obligations, duties or limitations imposed on the FCM with respect to its use of such Covered Collateral under the laws of your jurisdiction?

Please see our discussion on this point in paragraph 6.2 of Section II above.

2.10 Assuming that the FCM has obtained a valid and perfected security interest under the laws of your jurisdiction, to the extent such laws apply, by complying with the requirements set forth in your responses to questions 2.1 to 2.6 above, as applicable, what are the formalities (including the necessity to obtain a court order or conduct an auction), notification requirements (to the Covered Customer or any other person) or other procedures, if any, that the FCM must observe or undertake in enforcing its security interest as an FCM under the Covered Agreement? For example, is it free to sell the Covered Collateral (including to itself) and apply the proceeds to satisfy the Covered

Customer's outstanding obligations under the Covered Agreement? Do such formalities or procedures differ depending on the type of Covered Collateral involved?

On the assumption that the Security Interest is valid and perfected under New York law and the requirements in questions 2.1 to 2.6 above have been addressed:

- (i) Subject to our assumptions in paragraphs 6.11 and 6.17 of Section I above and all requirements set out in paragraph 6.1.5 of Section II being satisfied, the Security Interest over the Customer's Charged Assets comprising cash or securities constitutes a security financial collateral arrangement. Therefore, the complex rules under English law relating to security interests and their enforcement generally, such as those relating to foreclosure and clogs on an equity of redemption, will not apply to such Security Interest. Instead, under the FC Regulations, the FCM would be permitted to exercise its power under the Security Interest to appropriate the applicable financial collateral.¹⁰² The FCM would be required to value the collateral in accordance with the terms of the financial collateral arrangement and in any event in a commercially reasonable manner¹⁰³ and upon the exercise by the FCM of the power to appropriate, the equity of redemption of the Customer would be extinguished and all legal and beneficial interest of the Customer in the financial collateral would vest in the FCM.¹⁰⁴ If the value of the appropriated collateral exceeded the amount of the relevant financial obligations, the FCM would need to account to the Customer for the difference and if the opposite was true, the Customer would remain liable to the FCM for the difference.¹⁰⁵
- (ii) The Security Interest over the Customer Transactions does not constitute a security financial collateral arrangement and so any enforcement of such Security Interest upon an insolvency of the Customer would be subject to the administration moratorium. Given the existence of the administration moratorium, with your agreement, we do not consider further other provisions of English law applicable to the enforcement of security that is not a security financial collateral arrangement.

2.11 *Are there any laws or regulations in your jurisdiction that would limit or distinguish a creditor's enforcement rights with respect to the security interest in any type of Covered Collateral depending on (a) the type of transaction underlying the creditor's exposure, (b) the type of Collateral or (c) the nature of the creditor or the debtor? For example, are there any types of "statutory liens" that would be deemed to take precedence over a security interest?*

In relation to (a) and (b), whether laws or regulations would limit or distinguish a creditor's enforcement rights depends on whether or not the Security Interest constitutes a security

¹⁰² Regulation 17(1) of the FC Regulations.

¹⁰³ Regulation 18(1) of the FC Regulations.

¹⁰⁴ Regulation 17(2) of the FC Regulations.

¹⁰⁵ Regulation 18(2) of the FC Regulations.

financial collateral arrangement. Please see our discussion on this point in paragraph 6 of Section II above.

In relation to (c), no, to the extent that the creditor or debtor is an English Company as defined in paragraph 4.1 of Section I above.

The characterisation of the creditor's security interest as a fixed or floating security interest, in respect of which please see our discussion in footnote 88, will also be important under English law. In accordance with the insolvency waterfall, the funds realised from the assets of a company in liquidation or administration will be distributed first to fixed charged holders. Floating charge holders, on the other hand, will only be paid after: (A) moratorium debts and priority pre-moratorium debts (if the administration or liquidation was preceded within 12 weeks by a standalone moratorium), insolvency costs and expenses and preferential debts have been paid; and (B) the prescribed part for unsecured creditors has been carved out. Any remaining funds will be paid to unsecured creditors and then shareholders.

- 2.12** *How would your response to questions 2.10 and 2.11 change, if at all, assuming that an insolvency proceeding above has occurred with respect to the FCM (notwithstanding that the Covered Agreement may not provide for any events of default in respect of the FCM) rather than or in addition to the Covered Customer (for example, would this affect this ability of the FCM to enforce its security interest in Covered Collateral)?*

Our answers to questions 2.10 and 2.11 would not change because the insolvency of a party does not impact such party's right to enforce under English law.

- 2.13** *How are competing priorities between creditors determined in your jurisdiction? What conditions must be satisfied if the FCM's security interest in each type of Covered Collateral is to have priority over all other claims (secured or unsecured) of an interest in the Covered Collateral?*

On the basis of our assumption in paragraph 6.9 of Section I above, there would be no statutorily preferred creditors. However, this is subject to the FCM's security interest being characterised as a fixed security interest, in respect of which please see our discussion in footnote 88. Please also refer to the insolvency waterfall set out in our answer to question 2.11.

- 2.14** *Would the FCM's enforcement of its security interest in any type of Covered Collateral be subject to any stay, moratorium or freeze or otherwise be affected by commencement of the insolvency (that is, how does the institution of an insolvency proceeding change your response to question 2.10 above, if at all)?*

Please see our discussion on this point in: (i) Qualifications 1.16 to 1.19 of Section IV below; and (ii) paragraph 6 of Section II above.

- 2.15** *Will the Covered Customer (or its administrator, provisional liquidator, conservator, receiver, trustee, custodian or other similar official) be able to recover any transfers of Covered Collateral consisting of cash or securities made to the FCM during a certain "suspect period" preceding the date of the insolvency as a result of such a transfer*

constituting a “preference,” fraudulent transfer or transaction at an undervalue (however called and whether or not fraudulent) in favor of the FCM or on any other basis? If so, how long before the insolvency does this suspect period begin? Would the posting of additional margin (which could be required when an Account’s net liquidating equity has fallen below the required margin level for the Account due to trading losses in respect of one or more Covered Transactions) during the suspect period be subject to avoidance, either because the Covered Collateral was considered to relate to an antecedent or pre-existing obligation or for some other reason?

Please see our discussion on this point in paragraph 4 of Section II above in respect of the General Insolvency Principles and Statutory Avoidance Provisions. Please note that this discussion is limited to a general overview and summary, as we provide no opinion in relation to this question in relation to the Charged Assets.

- 2.16** ***Assuming that (a) pursuant to the laws of your jurisdiction, the laws of another jurisdiction govern the creation and/or perfection of the security interest (for example, because such Covered Collateral is Located or deemed Located outside your jurisdiction) and (b) the FCM has obtained a valid and perfected security interest under the laws of such other jurisdiction, are there any formalities, notification requirements or other procedures, if any, that the FCM must observe or undertake in your jurisdiction in enforcing its security interest in Covered Collateral?***

Please see our discussion on this point in paragraphs 5 and 6 of Section II above.

- 2.17** ***Are there any other local law considerations that you would recommend the FCM to consider in connection with enforcing its security interest in Covered Collateral?***

Please see our discussion on this point in paragraph 6 of Section II above.

However, we note that our recommendation is for any security arrangement over financial collateral to be structured as a security financial collateral arrangement and therefore do not express considerations relevant to security arrangements that are not financial collateral arrangements.

- 2.18** ***Are there any other circumstances you can foresee that might affect the FCM’s ability to enforce its security interest in the Covered Collateral in your jurisdiction?***

No, subject to paragraphs 4, 5 and 6 of Section I above, the advice in paragraph 6 of Section II above and the Qualifications in Section IV below.

IV. Qualifications and reliance

1 Qualifications

- 1.1** We express no opinion on any provision of the Clearing Agreement or any provision set out in the Summary Annex save for those provisions that we expressly address in this Memorandum.
- 1.2** The term “**enforceable**” as used in this Memorandum means that the obligations assumed by the relevant party under the relevant document are of a type which the English courts enforce. It does not mean that those obligations will necessarily be enforced in all circumstances in accordance with their terms.
- 1.3** Enforcement may be limited by general principles of equity – for example, in England, remedies such as specific performance and injunction may not be available.
- 1.4** An English court may not give effect to any contractual provision concerning payment of the costs of enforcement or litigation brought before an English court.
- 1.5** We have not reviewed any of the terms of the Transactions entered into, or to be entered into, between the FCM, the Customer and the DCO (or Foreign Futures Broker) and express no opinion on them.
- 1.6** The analysis in this Memorandum is restricted to the position where the relevant insolvency proceedings in respect of the Customer are governed by English law. We express no opinion as to whether English law would, in fact, govern such proceedings, whether or not conducted in the English courts.
- 1.7** Claims may become barred under the Limitation Act 1980 or may be or become subject to set-off or counterclaim.
- 1.8** We are not qualified to give, and have not given, accounting or auditing advice and nothing in this Memorandum is to be interpreted otherwise.
- 1.9** A certificate, determination, valuation, notification, opinion or the like might be held by the English courts not to be conclusive, final or binding if it could be shown to have an unreasonable or arbitrary basis or in the event of manifest error despite any provision in the relevant Clearing Agreement (or the DCO rules (or clearing agreement between the FCM and its Foreign Futures Broker) that it is subject to) to the contrary.
- 1.10** Any provision of the relevant Clearing Agreement (or the DCO rules (or clearing agreement between the FCM and its Foreign Futures Broker) that it is subject to) which constitutes, or purports to constitute, a restriction on the exercise of any statutory power may be ineffective.
- 1.11** The effectiveness of terms exculpating a party from a liability or from a duty otherwise owed may be limited by law or regulation.
- 1.12** Any provision of the relevant Clearing Agreement (or the DCO rules (or clearing agreement between the FCM and its Foreign Futures Broker) that it is subject to) stating that a failure or delay on the part of any party in exercising any right or remedy shall not operate as a waiver of such right or remedy may not be effective.

1.13 Any prohibition of bringing, instituting or joining insolvency proceedings in relation to any party is subject to the following qualifications:

- (a) it is possible that an English court would deal with an insolvency proceeding even if it had been presented in breach of contract; and
- (b) there may be no entitlement to damages as a result of such breach (as such insolvency proceeding may not itself be the cause of the relevant loss).

1.14 We do not express any opinion as to any taxation matters.

1.15 An English court may, or may be required to, stay proceedings or decline jurisdiction in certain circumstances - for example, if proceedings are brought elsewhere.

1.16 The Banking Act provides for a special resolution regime (the “**SRR**”) which gives substantial power to His Majesty’s Treasury, the Bank of England, the Financial Conduct Authority and the Prudential Regulation Authority (together, or individually, as applicable, the “**Authorities**”) to deal with and stabilise banks, banking group companies, investment firms and CCPs (though not investment banks, unless also one of the aforementioned) if they are in financial difficulties. As part of the SRR under Part 1 of the Banking Act, the Authorities may utilise five stabilisation options which are contained in sections 11 to 13 (inclusive) of Part 1 of the Banking Act (the “**Stabilisation Options**”). This is a consequence of the implementation of the Banking Resolution and Recovery Directive (the “**BRRD**”) ¹⁰⁶, as a result of which the Banking Act and the FC Regulations were amended in a way which imposes a number of restrictions on the ability of a party to terminate its contractual arrangements with an entity which is subject to an exercise of one of the Stabilisation Options, or action taken thereunder. ¹⁰⁷ These restrictions are as follows:

1.16.1 section 48Z of the Banking Act provides that an exercise of one of the Stabilisation Options, and the occurrence of any event directly linked to that exercise, are to be ignored in determining whether a contractual right to terminate a contract has arisen. The effect of section 48Z of the Banking Act is therefore to disapply any contractual termination rights which arise expressly by reference to an exercise of a Stabilisation Option, as well as any which arise by reference to the consequences of such an exercise (for example a right to terminate on a change of control or a disposal of assets). However, section 48Z of the Banking Act does not disapply contractual termination rights which arise other than through an exercise of a Stabilisation Option (for example through a

¹⁰⁶ Directive 2014/59/EU of the European Parliament and of the Council of 15 May 2014 establishing a framework for the recovery and resolution of credit institutions and investment firms.

¹⁰⁷ The stabilisation options consist of (i) a sale of all or part of a business to a private sector purchaser (section 11), (ii) a transfer of all or part of a business to a bridge bank (section 12), (iii) a transfer of all or part of a business to an asset management vehicle (section 12ZA), (iv) the bailing-in of certain liabilities (section 12A) and (v) temporary public ownership (section 13). We note that the transfer of property powers expressly contemplate transfers of property held on trust (however arising). The Banking Act provides that a property transfer instrument “*may make provision about – (a) the terms on which the property is to be held after the instrument takes effect, and (b) how any powers, provisions and liabilities in respect of the property are to be exercisable or have effect after the instrument takes effect*”. The power under paragraph (a) “*may remove or alter the terms of the trust on which the property is held only to the extent that the Bank of England thinks it necessary or expedient for the purpose of transferring – (a) the legal or beneficial interest of the transferor in the property; (b) any powers, rights or obligations of the transferor in respect of the property*”.

factual insolvency or through a change of control or disposal of assets which occurs other than as a result of an exercise of a Stabilisation Option);

- 1.16.2 section 70A(1) of the Banking Act allows the Authorities to suspend obligations to make payments or deliveries under any contract (not just “qualifying contracts” described in paragraph (ii) above). If exercised by the Authorities, the suspension power must end by no later than midnight on the first business day after the suspension takes effect (i.e. the suspension may only last for up to two working days), with the suspended obligations becoming performable once again at the end of the suspension period. The purpose of section 70A(1) of the Banking Act seems to be to give the Authorities flexibility to prevent termination from occurring (even where there is a payment/delivery default) by suspending the payment/delivery obligations for a short period pending resolution;
- 1.16.3 section 70B of the Banking Act allows the Authorities to temporarily suspend the rights of a secured creditor to enforce any “security interest” in relation to assets of an entity subject to SRR. The term “security interest” is broadly defined and means an interest or right held for the purposes of securing a payment or performance obligation. As with the temporary suspension on payment and delivery obligations described in the paragraph above, the exemptions to the suspension are unlikely to apply, although the temporary suspension period is limited in time as described above;
- 1.16.4 section 70C(1) of the Banking Act allows the Authorities to suspend a termination right of any party (other than, amongst others, central counterparties and central banks) to a “qualifying contract”. A “qualifying contract” is defined to include any contract where one of the parties is subject to the exercise of a Stabilisation Option and all the obligations under the contract to make payments, deliveries or to provide collateral continue to be performed. The effect of section 70C(1) of the Banking Act is therefore that the Authorities can suspend termination rights (beyond those disapplied under section 48Z of the Banking Act) provided that there is no payment/delivery default under the contract (as opposed to some other default, such as the commencement of insolvency proceedings); and
- 1.16.5 section 70C(6) of the Banking Act also provides that any suspension of termination rights by the Authorities under section 70C(1) of the Banking Act must end by no later than midnight on the first business day after the suspension takes effect (i.e. the suspension may only last for up to two working days) and section 70C(7) of the Banking Act allows the exercise of termination rights during the suspension period where the Authorities gives notice that the relevant contracts will not be subject to an exercise of a Stabilisation Option. Sections 70C(8) and (9) of the Banking Act provide that, once the suspension period has ended, termination rights become exercisable once again (provided that they have arisen other than through the use of a Stabilisation Option or a suspension under section 70C(1) of the Banking Act) and, where the contract has been transferred pursuant to an exercise of a Stabilisation Option, only if the termination right has been triggered by the transferee entity. The intention behind sections 70C(8) and (9) of the Banking Act therefore seems to be that, once the suspension period has ended, the parties’ termination rights are as they would have been but for the exercise of a Stabilisation Option.

1.17 The ability (through the use of certain of the Stabilisation Options) to transfer some, but not all, of the assets of a failing bank (or investment firm or banking group company) to a new entity (i.e. creating a “good entity” and a “bad entity”) was a key policy objective of the Banking Act. The assets could include property outside the UK and rights and liabilities governed by foreign law. Protection has, however, been afforded for secured liabilities by the Banking Act 2009 (Restriction of Partial Property Transfers) Order, the Banking Act 2009 (Restriction of Partial Property Transfers) (Amendment) Order and the Banking Act 2009 (Banking Group Companies) Order 2014 (together, the “**Banking Act Safeguard Orders**”).¹⁰⁸ The Banking Act Safeguard Orders provide that where a liability is secured against property or rights, a partial property transfer may not (i) transfer the property or rights against which the liability is secured unless that liability and the benefit of the security are also transferred or (ii) transfer the benefit of the security unless the liability which is secured is also transferred. Accordingly, in our opinion, the liabilities of the Customer would not be split from the assets over which the Security Interest is created in favour of the FCM under a partial property transfer.

1.18 The UK has implemented the “bail-in” provisions derived from the BRRD by changes to the Banking Act which took effect as from 1 January 2015. The bail-in provisions (which apply to banks, banking group companies and investment firms) effectively allow for:

- (i) claims of creditors to be reduced, cancelled or modified (including by changing the form of liabilities through amendment to contracts and instruments) as necessary to restore an institution to financial viability; and/or
- (ii) the transfer of shares and liabilities of an institution including to a bail-in administrator (temporarily) or another third party (e.g. creditors who have suffered losses or a purchaser).

Certain liabilities are excluded (as “excluded liabilities”) from the scope of bail-in under section 48B(8) of the Banking Act, including secured liabilities. In our opinion, the liabilities of the Customer to the FCM under the Clearing Agreement will be excluded because they are secured liabilities as a result of the Security Interest.

1.19 Part VII of FSMA provides for court-sanctioned transfers of the whole or part of the business carried out in the United Kingdom by certain banks and insurance companies. Pursuant to section 112A of FSMA (as amended by the FSMA 2000 (Amendments to Part 7) Regulations 2008) contractual provisions which seek, inter alia, to terminate or modify any interest or right as a consequence of anything done or likely to be done under Part VII of FSMA are in effect suspended until after the court order sanctioning the transfer is approved, and are only thereafter effective to the extent not amended by that order. The termination and liquidation provisions under the Clearing Agreement would fall within the scope of these suspension and modification

¹⁰⁸ The protective provisions in respect of netting and set-off arrangements in the Banking Act Safeguards Orders do not expressly apply to banking group companies. However, section 81C(2) of the Banking Act probably addresses the apparent lacuna in this context by providing that “[w]here the Bank of England exercises a stabilisation power in respect of a banking group company [...], the provisions relating to the stabilisation powers and the bank administration procedure contained in this Act [...] and any other enactment apply (with any necessary modifications) as if the banking group company were a bank”. As the Banking Act Safeguards Orders are enactments relating to the stabilisation powers, this would suggest that their protective provisions will apply to banking group companies as they do to banks and investment firms. This would seem to be a sensible result, and consistent with the stated policy objectives of the government.

provisions, with the result that the FCM would not normally be able to exercise its rights under the Clearing Agreement before the making of the order. Notice of an application to the court for an order under Part VII of FSMA is required to be published in the London Gazette and two national newspapers and is therefore likely to come to the FCM's attention. Any person who alleges that they would be adversely affected by the carrying out of the scheme has a right to be heard in the court proceedings which are required to approve any transfer. The FCM would, therefore, have the right to complain to the court before any transfer which would adversely affect its rights under the Clearing Agreement was implemented.

2 Addressees of this Memorandum, purpose and reliance

This Memorandum of law is addressed to the FIA and ISDA solely for their benefit and the benefit of their members in relation to their use of a Clearing Agreement. No other person may rely on this Memorandum for any purpose without our prior written consent. This Memorandum may, however, be shown by the FIA, ISDA, an FIA member or an ISDA member to a competent regulatory or supervisory authority or professional advisors for such member, the FIA or ISDA for the purposes of information only, on the basis that we assume no responsibility to such authority or any other person as a result, or otherwise.

Linklaters LLP

Linklaters LLP

Annex 1

Summary Annex

summarising the arrangements under the Clearing Agreement in respect of the Agent-Trust and Statutory Arrangements

March 23, 2025

The following is intended as a high-level overview and summary of the main concepts covered, conclusions reached, and factual assumptions in the Sullivan & Cromwell LLP Memorandum to the Futures Industry Association and the International Swaps And Derivatives Association, Inc. Regarding Futures and Options Transactions, Cleared Swap and Foreign Futures Transactions Executed and Carried by Futures Commission Merchants for Their Customers dated November 17, 2021 (the “S&C Memo”). Counsel should not rely on this overview and summary as a substitute for reading the S&C Memo in full, as this overview and summary does not include all the assumptions, nor the qualifications and detailed reasoning, set out in the S&C Memo. Terms used but not defined in this summary annex have the meanings given to those terms in the S&C Memo or the instruction letter to which this summary annex is attached. Unless otherwise indicated, the references to paragraphs and notes in the text below are to paragraphs and notes of this summary annex.

1 Legal relationships between FCM, customer and DCO (or foreign futures broker) prior to customer default

The customer agreement

1.1 Pursuant to the terms of a customer agreement (the “**customer agreement**”) between an FCM and its customer, the FCM maintains one or more accounts on its books and records in the customer’s name (individually or collectively, the “**customer account**”), and the customer authorizes the FCM, to execute, carry and clear contracts for the purchase and sale of US futures, foreign futures and/or cleared swaps¹ on behalf of the customer (with respect to the customer, its “**contracts**,” which are referred to in the S&C Memo as “**transactions**”).² The effect of this authorization, and the FCM’s acceptance, is to cause the FCM to become the customer’s agent for these purposes.³ If the customer clears only futures, the customer agreement will consist of a customer account agreement (a “**base account agreement**”). If the customer clears only cleared swaps or it clears both futures and cleared swaps, the customer agreement will consist of a base account agreement together with a cleared derivatives addendum (“**CDA**”). In either case, the customer agreement may also include one or more other documents relating to the terms of the relationship between the FCM and the customer. The CDA is intended to serve as an addendum to a base account agreement, and all of these documents together form a single agreement that governs the customer account. The customer agreement typically provides that the customer account and the customer’s contracts are subject to “applicable law,” which is generally defined to include applicable US legislation, rules, regulations and interpretations of regulatory agencies and self-regulatory organizations (“**SROs**”) and the rules of trading venues (including exchanges) and clearing organizations where the customer’s contracts are executed and cleared.⁴

¹ For purposes of this summary, the instruction letter to which it is annexed and the S&C Memo, “**futures**” means US futures and/or foreign futures, as the context may require; “**US futures**” means futures contracts or options on futures contracts cleared by the FCM for a customer through a derivatives clearing organization registered as such (a “**DCO**”) with the Commodity Futures Trading Commission (the “**CFTC**”) under the Commodity Exchange Act (the “**CEA**”); “**cleared swaps**” means swap contracts cleared by the FCM for a customer through a DCO (including single-name credit default swap contracts carried in accounts established in accordance with Section 4d(f) of the CEA pursuant to exemptive relief orders of the CFTC and the Securities and Exchange Commission); “**foreign futures**” means futures contracts or options on futures contracts made on or subject to the rules of a foreign board of trade and cleared by the FCM for a customer through a foreign futures broker; and “**foreign futures broker**” means a person that is a member of the foreign board of trade and foreign clearing organization (“**FCO**”).

² As used herein, “**contract**” means, depending on the context, either (i) a term of reference describing a unit of trading in a particular futures or cleared swaps product or (ii) a futures or cleared swap product approved and designated for trading or clearing pursuant to the rules of an exchange or other trading venue or clearing organization.

³ The customer agreement establishes (i) a debtor-creditor relationship between the FCM and the customer in respect of the customer account, (ii) the scope and terms of the FCM’s authority as agent and the responsibilities of the FCM and the customer in relation to the contracts carried by the FCM for the customer and (iii) other contractual rights and obligations of the FCM and its customer relating to their relationship. Some of those other contractual rights and obligations are rights and obligations of the FCM in a principal capacity as the customer’s contractual counterparty, rather in its capacity as the customer’s agent.

⁴ Some customer agreements also explicitly include the customs and practices of the clearing organizations and trading venues relevant to the customer’s contracts. In addition, to the extent the customer agreement is governed by New York law, it would generally be interpreted

March 23, 2025

1.2 Under the customer agreement, and consistent with its role as the customer's agent, the FCM is required to account to the customer for the profits and losses derived from the customer's contracts. To the extent that the contracts carried by the FCM for the customer generate profits, the FCM is required to account for those profits to the customer; to the extent that they generate losses, the customer is required to make the FCM whole for those losses.

1.3 The customer agrees in its customer agreement to (i) deposit and maintain margin with the FCM, (ii) pay the FCM the amount of any trading losses, debit balances or deficiencies (and any applicable interest on those amounts), premiums on options purchased for the customer, brokerage charges and commissions owed to or incurred by the FCM, charges imposed by exchanges or other SROs relating to the customer's contracts or the customer account, and other costs arising in the course of the customer's relationship with the FCM (and the customer agreement authorizes the FCM to debit the customer account for any of these amounts) and (iii) reimburse or indemnify the FCM for any costs or liabilities incurred by the FCM in the course of providing services or exercising remedies under the customer agreement. The customer grants to the FCM a security interest in the customer account as well as the contracts and the cash, securities and other property (collectively, "**funds**") credited to the customer account, as discussed in paragraphs 1.37 through 1.42. Events of default applicable to the customer and related remedial provisions are set out in both the base account agreement and the CDA (if any), as discussed in paragraphs 2.3 and 2.4. A customer agreement has no specified term, but may be terminated by either party by written notice. If either party delivers notice of termination of the customer agreement (other than as a result of a customer default), the customer must promptly close its open contracts or instruct the FCM to transfer them to another FCM; if the customer fails to do so, the FCM is entitled to liquidate the customer's open positions and any other property credited to the customer account. Rule 2-27 of the National Futures Association (the "**NFA**") also requires an FCM, upon receipt of an instruction from a customer to transfer its customer account (or portions thereof) to another FCM, to effect the transfer of balances and positions to the other FCM in accordance with the terms of Rule 2-27 (and such an instruction could be given by the customer without terminating the customer agreement). Additionally, CFTC Rule 39.15(d) mandates that a DCO must have rules providing that the DCO will promptly transfer all or a portion of a customer's positions, and related funds as necessary, from the clearing member of the DCO that carries the customer account to another clearing member, without requiring the close-out and rebooking of the contracts outstanding prior to the requested transfer, subject to certain conditions, including, among other things, that the customer has instructed the carrying clearing member to make the transfer and that the customer is not currently in default to the carrying clearing member.

The customer account

1.4 The FCM records in the customer account all the contracts entered into by the FCM on behalf of the customer, as well as debits and credits reflecting margin deposited by or excess margin released to the customer, realized and unrealized gains and losses on the customer's contracts, interest or other income on margin held in the customer account, net option values, commissions, amounts payable to introducing brokers, costs relating to physical settlement, fees and other amounts due to or from the customer in respect of the customer account and any other amounts that may be credited or debited to the customer account under the customer agreement.

1.5 As discussed in paragraphs 1.12 through 1.24, the CEA and the CFTC's rules with respect to the treatment of funds received by the FCM from, for or on behalf of customers to margin, guarantee or secure customer contracts, or accruing to customers as the result of their contracts (collectively, "**customer funds**"), require the FCM to segregate or set aside those customer funds based on the product classes to which they relate (*i.e.*, US futures, cleared swaps or foreign futures) and, as a general matter, prohibit commingling of customer funds segregated or set aside for one product class with customer funds segregated or set aside in respect of any other product class, or with the FCM's proprietary funds (except to the extent of the FCM's residual interest, as described in paragraphs

in accordance with the customs and practices of the futures industry as a whole, as well as in accordance with other standard rules of contractual interpretation.

March 23, 2025

1.16, 1.18 and 1.20). To ensure that the FCM maintains books-and-records segregation consistent with these rules, if a customer clears contracts in multiple product classes, it is treated as having a separate account or sub-account for each product within the customer account. Accordingly, as used in this summary annex, with respect to the customer, (i) “**US futures account**,” “**cleared swaps account**” and “**foreign futures account**” mean the entries on the FCM’s books and records pertaining to the US futures customer funds, cleared swaps customer funds or foreign futures customer funds, respectively, of the customer, (ii) “**futures account**” means the customer’s US futures account and/or its foreign futures account, as the context may require, (iii) “**account class**” means the customer’s US futures account, cleared swaps account or foreign futures account and (iv) “**customer account**” may refer, as the context requires, to any account class or all account classes on a combined basis maintained by the FCM for a customer under a customer agreement.

1.6 The customer agreement establishes the customer account as a mutual, open and running account between the customer and the FCM.⁵ A mutual open account is an account in which, by agreement of the parties, a connected series of debit and credit entries of reciprocal⁶ charges and allowances is to be recorded, and the parties intend that the individual items of the account, once applied to the account, will not be considered independently, but as a continuation of a related series, such that the account balance will increase and decrease as additional related debits and credits are entered and change the account balance until either party wishes to settle and close the account. In other words, as funds are credited to a customer account (whether as margin deposited by, or as gains accruing to, the customer), and funds are debited from the customer account (whether as charges payable by the customer or withdrawals to return funds to the customer or deliver them to another party), the balance of the customer account increases or decreases. Moreover, consistent with the common-law view that an account constitutes a claim or demand by one person against another creating a debtor-creditor relationship, the parties intend that the customer account represent one single indivisible liability, represented by the customer account’s balance, owed by one party, as debtor, to the other, as creditor, arising from the series of related and reciprocal debits and credits.⁷ Like other types of account agreements, the customer agreement generally provides no details as to the operation of the customer account or the method by which balances are determined, either pre- or post-default, but such matters may be inferred from both the customs and practices of the industry, the nature of the relationship between the customer and the FCM and the customer margining standards discussed under “**Margining and operation of the customer account**” in paragraphs 1.25 through 1.31, to which the customer account is subject.⁸ This balance – the customer account’s “**net liquidating equity**” – determines, among other things, when the FCM must call for initial and maintenance margin, when the FCM may disburse excess margin upon the customer’s request and how much the FCM must segregate or set aside pursuant to the Customer Property Rules discussed in paragraphs 1.132 through 1.234. It also serves as the basis for calculating the FCM’s claim against the customer in the event of the customer’s default, and the customer’s claim in the FCM’s bankruptcy, as described under “**Treatment of customer property in the FCM’s bankruptcy**” in paragraphs 1.32 through 1.36.

⁵ The terms “open” and “running” indicate that the business relationship reflected in the account is ongoing. *See* 1 C.J.S. Account, Action on § 1 (“More specifically, an open account involves ongoing charges by one party and payments by another party, where the parties have not settled the charges, or where there are running or current dealings between them and the account is kept open in expectation of future dealings.”).

⁶ In other words, the entries must reflect obligations that are mutual – between the same two parties.

⁷ This intention applies both within a single account class, as discussed below, and across account classes, because there is a single business relationship between the FCM and customer with respect to all account classes, and a single account maintained for the customer under the customer agreement, of which all account classes form a part.

⁸ The customer account is subject to these requirements both by law and regulation, which mandate these aspects of the manner in which customer accounts are managed, and by the customer agreement, which (as noted above) is expressly made subject to “applicable law” and frequently contains an express acknowledgement of the margin requirements specifically.

March 23, 2025

1.7 Under CFTC rules, for purposes of determining the amount that the FCM must segregate or set aside,⁹ the customer's net liquidating equity is equal to the market value of any customer funds that the FCM receives from the customer, as adjusted by (i) any permitted uses as described in paragraphs 1.19 and 1.20, (ii) any accruals on permitted investments of such customer funds that, pursuant to the customer agreement, are creditable to the customer, (iii) any unrealized gains and losses with respect to the customer's contracts,¹⁰ (iv) any charges lawfully accruing to the customer, including any commission, brokerage fee, interest, tax or storage fee and (v) any appropriately authorized distribution or transfer of such customer funds. In practice, prior to default, the net liquidating equity reflected in a customer account is determined in accordance with customer margining standards (the "**margining standards**") established by the "Joint Audit Committee," a representative committee of SROs, including the NFA and US futures exchanges, that participate in a joint audit and financial surveillance program with respect to FCMs that has been approved and is overseen by the CFTC. The margining standards (which address, among other things, when the FCM must call for margin, how excess margin is calculated, when it may be disbursed to the customer and how to compute net liquidating equity for margining purposes) represent "applicable law" to which the customer account and contracts are subject, as described in note 9, and operate together with the provisions of customer agreements relating to customer margin, payment, reimbursement and indemnification obligations to establish the customer's contractual rights to amounts payable to it under its customer agreement. See paragraphs 1.285 through 1.31 for further information as to how the net liquidating equity of a customer account is calculated for margining purposes.

Customer contracts

Assumed clearing relationships and account structures

1.8 The S&C Memo addresses the circumstance in which the FCM clears US futures and cleared swaps for the customer through a DCO as a direct member of the DCO, such that the FCM is interposed between the DCO and customer in the clearing chain. See the S&C Memo, Section VI. In the case of foreign futures, it is assumed that the FCM utilizes a foreign futures broker (which may be an affiliate of the FCM) to execute the foreign futures of the customer (which may be either a US or non-US person) on a foreign futures exchange and to clear them through an FCO (as a direct member of the FCO). See the S&C Memo, Section VII.

1.9 When the FCM clears US futures or cleared swaps for the customer, the FCM clears the contracts directly with the DCO, which credits the contracts to an omnibus customer positions account¹¹ of the FCM at the DCO maintained in the name of the FCM for the benefit of its customers in the relevant account class.¹² The FCM, in turn, credits the contracts to the customer account of the relevant customer on the FCM's books. Similarly, in the case of the customer's foreign futures, the foreign futures broker clears the contracts with the relevant FCO, which

⁹ As discussed in note 28, a different formulation of "net liquidating equity" is used for purposes of determining the amount of margin that the customer must deposit at any time. However, the result of both definitions is to ensure that the FCM receives sufficient margin from the customer to satisfy the customer's obligations in respect of the positions cleared and carried for it by the FCM and that the FCM segregates or sets aside and maintains sufficient funds to satisfy the net liquidating equity of all its customers.

¹⁰ See the discussion of unrealized gains and losses in paragraph 1.30.

¹¹ A "**position**" is "an interest in the market, either long or short, in the form of one or more open contracts." <https://www.cftc.gov/LearnAndProtect/AdvisoriesAndArticles/CFTCGlossary/index.htm#P>.

¹² In the case of cleared swaps, the structure of the omnibus customer positions account is the same as in the case of futures. However, the FCM is required to provide the DCO, no less frequently than once each business day, information sufficient to identify, for each cleared swaps customer, the portfolio of rights and obligations arising from the cleared swaps that such FCM intermediates for the customer. 12 C.F.R. § 22.11(c)(2). In addition, the DCO must maintain records, updated no less frequently than once each business day, of (1) the amount of margin required at such DCO for each cleared swaps customer of the relevant FCM; and (2) the sum of all such amounts for all customers of such FCM. 12 C.F.R. § 22.12(c). The DCO is obligated to treat the value of the customer funds received from each cleared swaps customer as belonging to that cleared swaps customer, except that this treatment does not limit the DCO's right to liquidate any or all positions in the omnibus customer positions account upon the default of the FCM. *Id.* § 22.15. As a result, although the customer funds of the various customers are commingled in a single omnibus account, they are "legally segregated" by the maintenance of records and rules that allow the DCO and the FCM to track the value of customer funds allocable to each customer and ensure that the funds of one customer are not used to satisfy the obligations arising out of cleared swaps allocable to another customer.

March 23, 2025

credits the contracts to an omnibus account with the FCO maintained in the name of the foreign futures broker for its customers, and the foreign futures broker, in turn, credits the contracts to an omnibus customer positions account of the FCM with the foreign futures broker maintained in the name of the FCM for the benefit of its foreign futures customers. The FCM, in turn, credits the contracts to the customer accounts of the relevant customer on the FCM's books. Accordingly, for every contract, there are at least two relevant accounts: (i) the customer account on the FCM's books in the name of the customer to which the FCM credits all contracts cleared for that customer by the FCM across all DCOs or FCOs, and (ii) an omnibus customer positions account of the FCM at the applicable DCO, or foreign futures broker, to which the FCM's customer contracts for all its customers in the relevant account class at that DCO, or foreign futures broker, are credited.

FCM as agent-trustee with respect to the customer's contracts

1.10 Although in all cases the FCM enters into the customer's contracts as the customer's agent and upon the instruction and for the risk and benefit of the customer, the FCM's relationship with the DCO or the FCM's foreign futures broker with respect to the customer's contracts is treated by the DCO or foreign futures broker as a principal-to-principal relationship. This principal-to-principal relationship is governed by the terms of the DCO's rules and procedures, or by a contractual arrangement between the FCM and the foreign futures broker (which is likely governed by non-US law). In neither case is the FCM's customer a party to the contracts. The customer is not in privity of contract with the DCO or foreign futures broker with respect to the customer's contracts, neither the DCO nor the foreign futures broker has any liability to the customer under the contracts and the customer has no rights or claims against the DCO or foreign futures broker under the contracts. Moreover, from a US law perspective, the FCM is not in privity of contract with the FCO. The FCM is fully liable as principal for all amounts owing to the DCO or foreign futures broker in connection with the FCM's customer contracts. *See* the S&C Memo, Sections VI and VII.

1.11 Under these arrangements, the FCM acts as an “**agent-trustee**” of the customer with respect to the contracts cleared by the FCM on behalf of the customer. This reflects the fact that, as the sole counterparty and principal obligor to the DCO or foreign futures broker under the contracts cleared by the FCM on the customer's behalf with the DCO or foreign futures broker,¹³ the FCM holds legal title to (*i.e.*, it is the legal owner of) the contracts credited to the omnibus customer positions account maintained with the DCO or foreign futures broker — but the customer is the beneficial owner (*i.e.*, the owner in equity) of the contracts cleared by the FCM on the customer's behalf and credited to the omnibus customer positions account at the relevant DCO or foreign futures broker, entitled to their benefit and subject to the burdens of and obligations arising from the contracts. In other words, these contracts are held in trust¹⁴ for the customer by the FCM.¹⁵ Because contracts that have the same terms (*e.g.*, futures contracts for the same commodity and delivery month traded on the same exchange) are fungible and are held by the FCM for all its customers for which it clears and maintains open positions in such fungible contracts, the customer does

¹³ The precise nature of what the FCM holds for the customer when it clears contracts through a foreign futures broker will depend on the structure of those contracts and the laws governing those contracts and the relationship with the foreign futures broker. If the FCM is a party to the contracts, it would be an agent-trustee for the customer in respect of the contracts.

¹⁴ Under US common-law principles, (i) an agent undertakes to act on behalf of the principal and subject to its control, but an agent, as such, does not acquire title to the property of its principal (although an agent may have possession of, and be authorized to deal with, its principal's property); (ii) a trustee has title to property that it holds subject to equitable duties to deal with it for the benefit of another, but is not subject to the control of the trust settlor or beneficiaries except to the extent the terms of the trust reserve or confer some such power over the trustee; and (iii) an agent-trustee is an agent that has title to property that it agrees to hold for the benefit and subject to the control of its principal, resulting in a technical trust relationship, but one that is generally subject to rules of agency, not trust, law.

¹⁵ Notably, however, as mentioned in paragraph 2.1, notwithstanding this agent-trustee relationship with respect to the customer's contracts, the FCM retains a contractual right under the customer agreement, under the circumstances specified in the customer agreement (including certain non-default scenarios), to close out the contracts in its capacity as the contractual counterparty to the DCO, for its own account as principal and without regard to the directions or interest of the customer.

March 23, 2025

not have an interest in or any claim to any specific contract, but rather maintains a *pro rata* beneficial interest in such fungible contracts as a whole.¹⁶ See Section VI of the S&C Memo.

Customer funds

1.12 As noted above, an FCM is required to segregate customer funds. Customer funds relating to each account class must be segregated separately and in accordance with the respective rules for each account class. The segregation rules are set out in (i) section 4d(a)(2) of the CEA and CFTC rules 1.20 through 1.30 and 1.32, in the case of customer funds of US futures customers, and (ii) section 4d(f) of the CEA and the CFTC's Part 22 rules, in the case of customer funds of cleared swaps customers. Similarly, the FCM is required to hold customer funds of foreign futures customers in "separate accounts" in accordance with the CFTC's Part 30 rules. The separate account rules applicable to foreign futures and the segregation rules applicable to US futures and cleared swaps are similar, but are based on different statutory provisions and reflect the different clearing relationships (and risks) involved in foreign futures. The CEA statutory provisions and the segregation or separate account rules (collectively, the "**Customer Property Rules**") applicable to each account class provide that the FCM may not commingle customer funds of customers maintained in such account class with funds that are deposited by customers and maintained in accounts pursuant to the rules applicable to the other account classes or with the FCM's proprietary funds, unless such commingling is expressly permitted by CFTC rule or order (or by any DCO rule approved by the CFTC).

US futures and cleared swaps

1.13 The respective Customer Property Rules for US futures and cleared swaps require the FCM to treat and deal with the customer funds of each of its customers with contracts in each account class as belonging to the customer, separately account for and segregate the customer funds from its own assets (other than certain proprietary funds of the FCM contributed by the FCM to the segregated assets, which may be commingled with such customer funds, as described in paragraph 1.16) and not use such customer funds to margin the contracts or secure or extend the credit of any customer or person other than the customer for whom such customer funds are held. The Customer Property Rules for each of these account classes specify the amount of property that must be held under the rules, the manner in which the property must be held and the purposes for which the FCM may use the property.

1.14 The FCM may deposit segregated funds (as defined in paragraph 1.15) only with permitted depositories, which are banks or trust companies (in an omnibus account established by the FCM with its bank for the benefit of its customers of the relevant account class), DCOs (in the FCM's omnibus customer margin accounts on the books of the DCOs for customers of the relevant account class),¹⁷ and other registered FCMs (each, a "**depository**"), in

¹⁶ There do not appear to be any cases that evaluate the precise scope of the customer's interest in the contracts carried by the FCM, if only because the nature of the customer's interest in the underlying contracts would not determine the outcome in the context of the FCM's insolvency pursuant to the CFTC's Part 190 rules." See paragraphs 1.32 – 1.36. Additionally, the nature and scope of the customer's interest in futures contracts cleared for it are entirely irrelevant in determining how the FCM may perfect its security interest in such contracts under the UCC. As discussed in note 452, the customer's futures contracts are, by definition, "commodity contracts" carried in a "commodity account" by the FCM as the customer's "commodity intermediary." As a result, under UCC Article 9, the FCM's security interest may be perfected by the FCM's control of the customer account, which the FCM has automatically by virtue of its status as a commodity intermediary, and there is no need to consider the nature and scope of the customer's interests in such contracts. In contrast, if the FCM and customer elect to treat the customer's cleared swaps as "financial assets" credited to a "securities account" maintained for the customer by the FCM as the customer's "securities intermediary" for purposes of UCC Article 8, the rights and interests of the customer in respect of its cleared swaps under the indirect holding provisions of Article 8 parallel the rights and interests of the customer against the FCM as agent-trustee described above. However, even in the case of cleared swaps that are subject to a financial asset election, the nature and scope of a customer's rights and interests in such cleared swaps do not determine their treatment under the CFTC's Part 190 rules in the FCM's insolvency. See the discussion in note 43.

In any event, the customer's interest should not extend beyond the contracts that are for the same commodity and delivery month and traded on the same exchange, if only because the FCM cannot be said to have executed any other contract on behalf of that customer.

¹⁷ The DCO holds the funds of customers of multiple FCMs in a single account with its bank or custodian, but allocates those funds to the respective FCMs on the books of the DCO, in a manner similar to the way in which the FCM commingles funds of multiple customers in the accounts that it maintains with its banks and custodians but credits individual customers with their respective shares of such funds.

March 23, 2025

each case with account names that clearly identify the funds therein as belonging to the FCM's customers in the applicable account class and show that the funds are segregated as required by the Customer Property Rules for the account class. As used in this summary annex, "**segregated account**" means, with respect to either US futures or cleared swaps, an account maintained by the FCM with an individual depository to hold segregated funds for the benefit of customers in the applicable account class, and "**segregated funds account**" means, with respect to each account class, all segregated accounts (on a combined basis) maintained by the FCM with all depositories that hold segregated funds in respect of the account class.

1.15 The respective Customer Property Rules for US futures and cleared swaps result in what US federal courts (both district and appellate) and the CFTC have described as a "technical trust" or "specific statutory trust" over all the customer funds held by the FCM for the benefit of its customers in the applicable account class, as well as any proprietary funds contributed by the FCM to the segregated funds with respect to the account class (such customer funds and proprietary funds for each account class, collectively, the "**segregated funds**" for such account class). See the S&C Memo, Section VI. The respective statutory trusts for US futures and cleared swaps are established by the CEA and related regulations; they are distinct from the common-law agent-trustee relationship described above, under which the FCM carries customer contracts. Moreover, the statutory trusts are not common-law trusts, and not subject to common-law fiduciary legal principles. Although similar to a common-law "resulting trust,"¹⁸ the scope of the statutory trusts, and the duties of the FCM with respect to the customer funds, are determined by the Customer Property Rules for the applicable account class.

1.16 The distinction between the nature of the specific statutory trusts and a common law trust is exemplified by several actions that the FCM may take under the respective Customer Property Rules for US futures and cleared swaps, but that generally would not be permitted in relation to a classic common-law trust. Several examples demonstrate these differences. First, the Customer Property Rules for each account class permit the FCM to invest customer funds in certain types of permitted investments specified by the CFTC ("**permitted investments**") and retain as its own any resulting income – something that would not be permitted to a common-law trustee.¹⁹ Second, as noted above, the FCM is permitted to commingle customer funds of different customers held in the same account class on an omnibus basis in its segregated funds account for the account class. Third, the FCM, in accordance with the Customer Property Rules for each account class, may deposit and maintain its own funds as a "**residual interest**" in its segregated funds account for the account class as a cushion or buffer to protect against becoming "undersegregated" (*i.e.*, failing at any time to hold funds in such accounts sufficient to meet the CFTC's "**segregation requirement**" for the account class), as discussed in paragraph 1.18. Fourth, and most fundamentally, the FCM is permitted to use the segregated funds that are subject to the statutory trust to satisfy its own obligations to DCOs and other parties in relation to customer contracts – whether for the same or for a different customer – as discussed in paragraph 1.19. See the S&C Memo, Section VI.B.

1.17 The primary purpose of the statutory trust, and the Customer Property Rules as a whole, is to ensure that the FCM has sufficient assets, in liquid form, available at all times to satisfy its obligations in respect of its customers' accounts. The segregation requirement was adopted to curb abuses in the handling of customer funds that were common practices by futures commission merchants before the enactment of the CEA. Some commission merchants in the futures markets used customer funds belonging to one customer to extend credit to more favored

¹⁸ A "**resulting trust**" is a type of trust that arises by operation of law when the actions of the parties indicate that money is transferred to a party with the intention that the money is to be kept or used as a separate fund for the benefit of the payor or a third person. The trust carries out and enforces the inferred intent of the parties. The trustee of such a trust "has no duties to perform, no trust to administer and no purpose to carry out except the single task of holding onto or conveying the property to the beneficiary." *In re Downey Financial Corp.*, 499 B.R. 439, 468 (Bkrcty. D. Del. 2013).

¹⁹ Examples of permitted investments include (i) investments (including by means of reverse repo transactions) of customer funds in the form of cash in various types of highly liquid securities and (ii) sales of customer funds in the form of securities by means of repo transactions. In all cases, the FCM must also segregate the permitted investments that it makes with segregated funds and must bear any losses arising from the investments. This segregation requirement serves to ensure that sufficient value is maintained in segregation or set aside so that it is available at all times to satisfy customer claims, including in the FCM's bankruptcy.

March 23, 2025

customers or used customer funds for their own proprietary trading. These practices often left FCMs without sufficient resources to satisfy their obligations to their customers in respect of their accounts. Today, segregation is also recognized as a key measure protecting the markets, by ensuring the availability of funds to the FCM when required to comply with its obligations to a DCO in respect of the customer's contracts.

1.18 Under the Customer Property Rules, the FCM must maintain funds in segregation in an aggregate amount at least sufficient to cover the FCM's "total obligations" to all customers in the relevant account class. This amount is equal to the aggregate positive net liquidating equity for every customer in the same account class (without reduction for any customer net liquidating equities that are negative). The funds held in segregation may be the actual funds received from customers or for the customers' account, or may be other funds derived by the FCM from other sources.²⁰ In addition, to prevent the use of one customer's funds to margin or settle another customer's positions, the FCM must have, for each customer account whose net liquidating equity is insufficient on any business day to cover the margin required for the customer's open positions, a residual interest in its segregated funds account on the following business day in an amount at least equal to the sum of the undermargined amounts of customer accounts in the same account class. Furthermore, the FCM maintains additional funds in segregation (as part of its residual interest) in excess of its total obligations to all customers to protect against becoming undersegregated at any time.²¹ If the FCM discovers at any time that it holds insufficient funds in its segregated funds account for an account class to satisfy the segregation requirement or the undermargined amounts requirement for the account class, it must immediately deposit sufficient funds into its segregated funds account to bring the account back into compliance. The FCM may make withdrawals from its segregated accounts for an account class that are made to or for the benefit of customers, as described in paragraph 1.19, but may also make withdrawals for its own proprietary uses to the extent of its residual interest, subject to certain limitations and conditions (including the general limitation that any withdrawal of funds not made to or for the benefit of customers must not result in one customer's funds being used to margin or carry the contracts, or extend the credit, of any other customer or person).

1.19 The Customer Property Rules for US futures and cleared swaps expressly permit the FCM to apply segregated funds maintained in each account class as necessary in the normal course of business to margin, guarantee, secure, transfer, adjust or settle the customer's contracts in such account class with a DCO or another FCM, including to pay commissions, brokerage, interest, taxes, storage and other charges incurred in connection with the customer's contracts ("**permitted uses**"). Other costs and expenses that are chargeable to the customer under the customer agreement but not necessary to the execution or maintenance of its contracts may not be paid directly from segregated funds (because that would reduce the segregated funds available for distribution to other customers whose funds are maintained in the same account class), but they may be charged to the customer account by debiting the cash balance in the customer account ("**chargeable costs**"). By debiting the cash balance, the FCM offsets the customer's obligation to reimburse the FCM for the chargeable costs against the FCM's obligation to repay the cash balance and thereby reduces the customer's net liquidating equity, and with it the customer's interest in the funds held in segregation. This reduction in the customer's interest increases the FCM's residual interest in the segregated funds, thereby permitting the FCM (if it is otherwise fully compliant with segregation requirements) to withdraw the corresponding amount of funds from segregation to reimburse itself the amount of the chargeable costs (provided that the FCM satisfies the conditions and restrictions for withdrawal of residual interest funds). In practice, the FCM may utilize this method in connection with payment of the FCM's commissions and fees payable by the customer to the FCM, as well as reimbursement of amounts paid by the FCM to third parties in respect of the customer's contracts. See the S&C Memo, Section VI.B.

²⁰ Although cash margin is fungible, such that it would be impossible to determine whether the cash held in segregation is or is not the same cash that the FCM received from, or for the account of, the customer, the same rule applies to non-fungible margin, such as margin in the form of securities. The FCM may hold the actual securities received from the customer in segregation, or may segregate cash with a value equal to that of the securities, in lieu of the securities themselves. See note 19.

²¹ The FCM is required to establish and maintain a target residual interest that is in an amount that reasonably ensures that the FCM always remains in compliance with the segregation requirement.

March 23, 2025

Foreign futures

1.20 The Customer Property Rules for foreign futures are parallel to, but are separate from, the Customer Property Rules for customer funds maintained in the other two account classes. They require the FCM to set aside and maintain in one or more “**separate accounts**” funds in an amount, which is denominated as the “foreign futures or foreign options secured amount” (the “**secured amount**”), at least sufficient to cover or satisfy all its obligations to foreign futures customers, which are defined as the full net liquidating equities owed to them by the FCM. The FCM must deposit the secured amount under an account name that clearly identifies the funds as belonging to foreign futures customers and shows that the secured amount is set aside as required by Part 30. The FCM may deposit funds set aside as the secured amount only with permitted depositories, which include banks or trust companies located in the US, banks or trust companies outside the US that have in excess of \$1 billion of regulatory capital, registered FCMs or DCOs, FCOs of any foreign board of trade, members of any foreign board of trade, or any such member’s or clearing organization’s designated depositories. The FCM may hold the secured amount in separate accounts maintained in non-US depositories outside the US only in an amount sufficient to meet margin requirements established by foreign boards of trade or FCOs, or to meet margin calls issued by foreign futures brokers carrying foreign futures of the FCM’s customers, together with an additional “prefunding” amount to mitigate operational demands. The FCM is prohibited from using the funds of one foreign futures customer to purchase, margin or settle the contracts of, or to secure or extend credit to, any person other than such customer. As with US futures and cleared swaps, the foreign futures Customer Property Rules have a “permitted uses” provision (set out in CFTC rule 30.7) that expressly permits the FCM to “withdraw funds from [separate accounts] in an amount necessary in the normal course of business to margin, guarantee, secure, transfer or settle [customers’ foreign futures positions] with a foreign broker or clearing organization.” The Customer Property Rules for foreign futures also require the FCM to maintain a residual interest in its separate account(s)²² and permit investment of the amounts held in the separate account(s), subject to the FCM accepting liability for losses in a manner similar to the requirements and limitations on the FCM’s investment of the funds in a segregated account for US futures or cleared swaps. The FCM may not commingle foreign futures customer funds with its own property, except in accordance with the rules relating to its residual interest in those funds, or with segregated funds maintained in the other two account classes.

1.21 Prior to amendments to the CFTC’s Part 30 rules made in 2013, requirements regarding the margin provided by foreign futures customers were substantially less robust than the segregation requirements established by the Customer Property Rules for US futures and cleared swaps, and those established by the 2013 amendments. Among other things, the FCM was required to set aside in separate accounts a secured amount sufficient to cover only the margin required on open positions, plus or minus any unrealized gains or losses on such positions. The FCM was not required to set aside a secured amount sufficient to cover all the FCM’s obligations to foreign futures customers (*i.e.*, the positive net liquidating equities of all foreign futures customers). Any customer funds deposited by customers in excess of such amount could be held by the FCM in operating cash accounts and used by the FCM as if they were its capital. Moreover, the FCM was permitted, but was not required, to set aside funds for foreign futures customers if they were not US persons.

1.22 The CFTC did not view the pre-2013 Customer Property Rules for foreign futures as operating to impose a statutory trust over foreign futures customer funds. Instead, the CFTC believed the secured amount under the pre-2013 rules represented a security deposit made by the FCM to secure its obligations to its foreign futures customers and, unlike US futures segregated funds, did not constitute a trust of funds explicitly denominated as belonging to customers.

1.23 However, the 2013 amendments significantly enhanced the protections afforded foreign futures customer funds and extended to foreign futures customers treatment substantially equivalent to the treatment already provided

²² As used herein, “**separate account funds**” means the funds credited to a separate account, including in respect of the FCM’s residual interest.

March 23, 2025

to US futures customers. The amendments effectively replicated for foreign futures the segregation regimes applicable to US futures (including rights of the FCM, such as the right of permitted uses), thereby contributing to the CFTC's stated goal of having customer protections that are substantially similar across the three account classes. Like the futures and cleared swaps segregation regimes, the new foreign futures customer funds rules required the funds received by or for the account of foreign futures customers to be held in a separate account for the specific purpose of carrying out the customers' business. Based on the current substantial similarities of the three customer property regimes resulting from the 2013 amendments and applying reasoning of courts in cases in which they have found statutory trusts in other regulatory frameworks, the S&C Memo concludes that there is a strong argument that the foreign futures Customer Property Rules operate to establish a separate specific statutory trust over foreign futures customer funds, although no court or regulator has yet specifically confirmed this view. *See* the S&C Memo, Section VII.D.

Implications of Customer Property Rules in respect of customer entitlements

1.24 Under the Customer Property Rules for each account class, the claims of customers for their customer funds, together with the FCM's residual interest, constitute the entirety of the entitlements to the segregated funds or separate account funds of such account class. The FCM's residual interest, as its name implies, is the remainder of the segregated funds or separate account funds of the applicable account class after accounting for the aggregate claims of customers to their customer funds and is subordinated to the interests of the customers. For purposes of the Customer Property Rules for each account class, the extent of each customer's entitlement to the segregated funds or separate account funds is limited to a monetary value equal to its net liquidating equity, which the CFTC views as representing the FCM's total obligations to the customer in respect of such account class.

Margining and operation of the customer account

Example of margining between the FCM and DCOs in respect of US futures and cleared swaps

1.25 When the FCM establishes an open position for the customer in a US future or cleared swap cleared by a DCO, the FCM will be required to satisfy the DCO's initial margin requirement for the position by delivering funds to the DCO to be held in the DCO's account with its depository.²³ The DCO will credit the funds received from the FCM to the omnibus customer margin accounts for customers of the relevant account class on the books of the DCO. If the open position is closed, the FCM is no longer required to maintain initial margin for it, and unless the funds are needed to margin other positions of any customer in the same account class cleared by the FCM with the DCO, the DCO will return any initial margin it holds with respect to that position to the FCM's segregated account at the settlement bank that it uses in connection with that DCO.²⁴ Furthermore, the amount of initial margin required with respect to a contract may change over the term of the contract; if that occurs, the FCM will be required to deliver additional funds to the DCO, or will be entitled to receive the return of the now-excess funds from the DCO, on the same basis.

²³ *See* note 17.

²⁴ A DCO will calculate initial margin in respect of an FCM's omnibus customer positions account on a "gross" basis equal to the sum of the initial margin amounts that would be required by the DCO for each individual customer within that account as if each customer were a clearing member. However, the DCO and FCM will settle *US futures* initial margin amounts due on the same day on a net basis, such that initial margin amounts due from customers will be netted against initial margin amounts being released by the DCO to other customers. In contrast, *cleared swaps* initial margin amounts are settled on a gross basis. The FCM's customers are divided into those whose initial margin requirements have increased and those whose initial margin requirements have decreased since the prior day, and the FCM must deposit with the DCO the aggregate of the increased initial margin amounts before it is permitted to withdraw the aggregate of the released initial margin amounts.

March 23, 2025

1.26 In addition, for each open position of the customer in a contract in respect of which the DCO and FCM exchange variation margin amounts,²⁵ the DCO will (i) at the end of each trading day, mark to market the position and determine a variation margin amount payable by the DCO to the FCM (or by the FCM to the DCO) equal to any trading gains (or losses) in respect of the position for that trading day,²⁶ (ii) net that variation margin amount with all other variation margin amounts for all other open positions of the customer and all other customers in the same account class cleared by the FCM at the DCO and (iii) at or before the opening of the next trading day, deposit to or withdraw from the FCM's segregated account at its settlement bank the resulting aggregate net variation margin amount. DCOs are authorized to credit or debit variation margin payments from the FCM's segregated account without further action or authorization by the FCM; accordingly, this process occurs without any action by the FCM. Any other DCO clearing open positions of the same customer in the same account class will conduct a similar variation margin settlement process. Because all these debits and credits are made by each DCO to the FCM's segregated funds account,²⁷ the variation margin amounts credited by one DCO to the FCM's segregated account in respect of the net gains on the customer's open positions with the DCO may be used to satisfy variation margin amounts for which another DCO debits the segregated account in respect of net losses on open positions it clears. The netting of variation margin amounts due to a DCO (in respect of trading losses) and from the same DCO (in respect of trading gains) in respect of the customer's open positions in contracts cleared by the DCO, and the use of variation margin amounts received from one DCO (in respect of net trading gains) and to satisfy variation margin requirements payable to another DCO (in respect of net trading losses) in respect of the customer's open positions in contracts cleared by each DCO constitute permitted uses of customer funds to satisfy the customer's obligations.

1.27 If, at any time at or following the establishment of an open position, the FCM holds insufficient funds of the customer to fully cover the DCO's initial or variation margin requirements, the FCM will be required to use its own funds, whether or not it is then able to obtain additional margin in the requisite amount from the customer.

Example of margining between the FCM and customer in respect of US futures and cleared swaps

1.28 If the customer's net liquidating equity is less than the applicable margin requirement for its customer account, the customer account is undermargined, and the FCM will call for the customer to deposit with the FCM additional funds so that the customer's net liquidating equity at least equals the customer account's initial margin

²⁵ The DCO and FCM exchange variation margin amounts with respect to all cleared swaps and US futures contracts, other than options on futures with "equity-style" margining. No variation margin amounts are paid in respect of options with "equity-style" margining prior to the exercise of the options. An upfront premium on an equity-style option is paid from the buyer to the seller (via the DCO) when the option is traded, and the buyer receives a credit net liquidating value ("NLV"), equal to the current replacement value of the option, which the buyer can use as collateral to satisfy its initial margin requirements or offset any debit NLV on other equity-style options. Upon receipt of the upfront premium, the seller receives a debit NLV that must be covered by collateral, being either any credit NLV on other equity-style options or cash, securities or other collateral. The value of the NLV – both debit and credit – varies each day with the current fair value of the option. If the option is exercised, the buyer receives the underlying future, and the final NLV becomes the variation margin amount on the resulting futures position. In contrast, for an option on a future with "futures-style" margining, a premium is paid only upon exercise/expiry, not upfront on the trade date, there is no NLV, and variation margin amounts are paid on a daily basis during the life of the option.

²⁶ Variation margin amounts exchanged by a DCO and FCM in respect of US futures and cleared swaps constitute settlement payments that extinguish mark-to-market exposures as between the DCO and the FCM, rather than transfers of collateral that secure such exposures. As a result, if the FCM pays variation margin to the DCO, the DCO is not obligated to hold the variation margin for the benefit of that FCM in the omnibus customer margin account maintained on its books. However, daily settlement by the FCM and DCO of the variation margin amounts in respect of open positions does not result in the positions being considered settled or closed.

²⁷ As noted above, the FCM may maintain more than one segregated account; all the segregated accounts (on a combined basis) maintained by the FCM with all depositories that hold segregated funds in respect of the account class are treated as a single fund relating to the relevant account class in which all customers within that account class have an interest. Generally, a DCO will designate a limited number of banks or trust companies that they themselves use as settlement banks and the FCM will pick one on the DCO's list as the FCM's settlement bank for that DCO. To the extent possible, the FCM will typically select a settlement bank that it can use across DCOs in respect of the same account class and currency. For example, the FCM may select the New York branch of a bank for USD and the London Branch of the bank for currencies other than USD.

March 23, 2025

requirement.²⁸ When the customer meets the margin call, the funds will be deposited in one of the FCM's segregated accounts for the applicable account class at one of the FCM's settlement banks (or credited to one of the FCM's segregated securities custody accounts, in the case of non-cash funds), and the FCM will credit the customer's deposit to the cash balance (and/or the non-cash margin balance) of the customer account (which will increase the liability of the FCM to the customer and the customer's net liquidating equity claim against the FCM's segregated funds for such account class). The FCM must continue to hold the funds with permitted depositories, as described in paragraph 1.14, which may include the FCM's omnibus customer margin accounts for customers of the relevant account class on the books of one or more DCOs (which may or may not be DCOs through which the FCM has cleared positions for that customer).²⁹ Each of the cash and non-cash balances in the customer account on the FCM's books represents funds deposited by the customer with the FCM or derived from the customer's contracts, and those balances are not adjusted when the FCM deposits initial margin with a DCO in respect of the customer's contracts as a result of establishing positions in the customer's contracts cleared through the DCO, or when the DCO releases initial margin to the FCM as a result of closing those positions.

1.29 The FCM may call for initial margin from the customer in respect of a position in an amount greater than the amount of initial margin that the relevant DCO requires from the FCM in respect of the position. The FCM will generally maintain the excess margin in its segregated account(s) at the FCM's settlement bank(s), but may also deposit the excess margin with other permitted depositories, including a DCO.

1.30 From the time the FCM establishes an open position for the customer in a contract in respect of which variation margin amounts are exchanged between the FCM and DCO³⁰ until the position is closed, daily trading gains or losses will increase or decrease the position's open trade equity reflected in the customer account, which will represent the net cumulative (*i.e.*, life-to-date) "unrealized" gain or loss in respect of the position. Unrealized gains and losses will not change the customer's cash balance (notwithstanding the cash payments made between the FCM and the DCO, as described in paragraph 1.25), but will increase or decrease open trade equity (and the customer account's net liquidating equity); increases in open trade equity resulting from unrealized gains in a customer's account represent "settled cash" that can support new trading by that customer.³¹ When the position is

²⁸ As noted above, a different definition of "net liquidating equity" is used for determining the customer's margining requirement (as opposed to determining the FCM's segregation requirement and the other purposes described above). For purposes of determining when the customer must provide additional margin, the customer's net liquidating equity is equal to the sum of (i) the customer account's "**open trade equity**" with respect to open positions in contracts in respect of which the FCM and DCO exchange variation margin amounts (which include cleared swaps and US futures, other than options on futures with "equity-style" margining (see note 25)), (ii) the customer account's cash balance, (iii) the collateral value of non-cash margin and (iv) if the FCM does not use the "total equity" method for margining, net option value ("**NOV**") of options in respect of which no daily variation margin amounts are exchanged. A "total equity" method FCM, for margining purposes, does not include NOV in net liquidating equity, and changes in NOV instead result in adjustments to the customer's initial margin requirement. Open trade equity represents the net cumulative "unrealized" gains and losses in respect of the customer's positions while they are open (*i.e.*, the open trade equity of an open position as of any date reflects the net cumulative gain or loss in respect of the position for the period from the establishment of the position to such date, as discussed in paragraph 1.30). When the position is closed, the net cumulative gain or loss represented by open trade equity is "realized" by the customer and the position's open trade equity (which may be less than zero) either increases or decreases the cash balance of the customer account (and thereafter is no longer reflected in the account's open trade equity). The cash balance is increased by, among other things, (1) cash deposited by the customer as margin with the FCM, (2) the net cumulative gains realized in respect of the customer's positions with open trade equity when they are closed (which equals the positions' net positive open trade equity immediately prior to their closure) and (3) any other amounts payable to the customer under the customer agreement; and is decreased by, among other things, (A) the net cumulative losses realized in respect of the customer's positions with open trade equity when they are closed (which equals the positions' net negative open trade equity immediately prior to their closure), (B) any permitted withdrawals of excess cash margin from the customer account by the customer and (C) commissions, brokerage fees, taxes, interest and other charges to the account.

²⁹ See paragraph 1.36.

³⁰ See note 25.

³¹ As discussed in paragraph 1.26, the daily settlements of variation margin amounts between the DCO and the FCM acting on behalf of its customers in respect of open positions constitute final settlement of the gains and losses as between the DCO and the FCM. However, because the FCM does not credit the customer account with corresponding cash credits or debits, they do not result in adjustments of the customers' cash balances for purposes of margining or segregation; rather, as between the customer and the FCM, the value to the customer

March 23, 2025

closed, the cumulative net trading gain or loss reflected in the position's open trade equity will be "realized" and the FCM will credit or debit the cash balance of the customer account by the amount of the position's open trade equity (and thereafter no open trade equity will be reflected in respect of the closed position). In addition, when the position is closed, the aggregate initial margin requirement applicable to the customer account will be reduced by the amount of initial margin the customer was required by the FCM to maintain in respect of the position.

Implications of margining practices and regulations in respect of customer entitlements

1.31 To the extent the customer account's net liquidating equity exceeds the initial margin requirement for the account, taking into account all open positions, such excess margin amount constitutes "**free funds**" available for withdrawal by the customer upon its request. When free funds are disbursed to the customer, the amount of the disbursement is debited from the customer account's cash balance (if cash is disbursed) or the non-cash margin balance (if non-cash margin is returned). Because the customer's entitlement to free funds is determined by reference to its net liquidating equity, the customer never has a claim against the FCM for payment of trading gains in respect of the customer's contracts on a contract-by-contract or gross basis.³²

Treatment of customer property in the FCM's bankruptcy

1.32 In the event of an FCM's bankruptcy, the "**customer property**" of the FCM would be subject to the special distribution rules established in the commodity broker liquidation provisions of Subchapter IV of Chapter 7 of the US Bankruptcy Code (the "**Code**"), 11 U.S.C. §§ 761-767 ("**Subchapter IV**"), and the CFTC's Part 190 bankruptcy rules, 17 C.F.R. §§ 190.00 *et seq.* ("**Part 190**").³³ Section 761 of Subchapter IV defines "customer property" to mean "cash, a security, or other property, or proceeds of such cash, security, or property, received, acquired, or held by or for the account of the [FCM], from or for the account of a customer," including, among other things, (i) an open commodity contract; (ii) property received, acquired or held to margin, guarantee, secure, purchase or sell a commodity contract; (iii) profits or contractual or other rights accruing to a customer as a result of a commodity contract; (iii) specifically identifiable property (as defined below); (iv) a security held as property of the FCM to the extent such security is necessary to meet a net equity claim based on a security of the same class and series of an issuer; (v) property that was unlawfully converted from and that is the lawful property of the estate; and (vi) "other property of the [FCM] that any applicable law, rule, or regulation requires to be set aside or held for the benefit of a customer, unless including such property as customer property would not significantly increase customer property" Additionally, the CFTC is given very broad statutory authority in Section 20 of the CEA to specify "by rule or regulation . . . that certain cash, securities, other property or commodity contracts are to be included in or excluded from customer property." The CFTC has exercised this authority to further specify in Part 190 that customer property includes, among other things, property that: (1) is segregated for customers on the "**filing**

of its open positions (including the net value of all historic variation margin amounts between the DCO and FCM) is accounted for as open trade equity. However, because the unrealized gains represent "settled cash" of the customer, the payments of variation margin between the FCM and the DCO result in increases or decreases in the customer's net liquidating equity claim against the FCM, increasing or decreasing the FCM's segregated funds requirement for the applicable account class and the customer's claim against those segregated funds.

³² Additionally, the CFTC's Rule 1.56 prohibits the FCM from representing in any way that it will, with respect to any commodity interest carried by the FCM for or on behalf of any person: (1) guarantee such person against loss; (2) limit the loss of such person; or (3) not call for or attempt to collect initial and maintenance margin as established by the rules of the applicable exchange. To the extent a provision in a Customer Agreement entitled the customer to gross trading gains and such provision was inconsistent with the prohibitions in Rule 1.56, it would be void.

³³ Enacted by Congress as part of the Bankruptcy Reform Act of 1978, Subchapter IV lays out a high-level framework for bankruptcy liquidations of FCMs (and DCOs) that was based largely on recommendations of the CFTC to address concerns it had with respect to the treatment of customer property in an FCM's bankruptcy. See *Bankruptcy Act Revision: Hearings on H.R. 31 and H.R. 32 Before the Subcommittee on Civil and Constitutional Rights of the House Committee on the Judiciary*, 94th Cong., 2d Sess. 2377-2420 (1977) (testimony of William T. Bagley, former CFTC Chairman) [hereinafter "**Bagley**"]. Subchapter IV's high-level framework is supplemented by the Part 190 rules, which were promulgated by the CFTC in 1982 to provide more detailed procedures to guide bankruptcy trustees and assist courts in conducting Subchapter IV proceedings in a manner consistent with the Customer Property Rules. See A. Corcoran and S. Erwin, *Maintenance of Market Strategies in Futures Broker Insolvencies: Futures Position Transfers from Troubled Firms*, 44 Wash. & Lee L. Rev. 849, 871 (Summer, 1987) [hereinafter "**Corcoran-Erwin**"].

date” (which is the date on which (x) a petition under the Code, or an application under the Securities Investor Protection Act (“**SIPA**”), is filed commencing a proceeding with respect to an FCM, or the Federal Deposit Insurance Corporation (“**FDIC**”) is appointed as receiver of the FCM under the Orderly Liquidation Authority); (2) was “received, acquired, or held to margin, guarantee, secure, purchase or sell a commodity contract” that is subsequently recovered by the avoidance powers of the trustee; (3) constitutes current assets of the FCM, including its trading or operating accounts and commodities held in inventory, in the greater of (a) the amount that the FCM is obligated to set aside as its targeted residual interest with respect to each account class and (b) the FCM’s obligations to cover debit balances or undermargined amounts as provided in the Customer Property Rules; and (4) is property of the FCM’s estate, including its trading or operating accounts and commodities held in inventory, to the extent that the other listed categories of customer property are insufficient to satisfy in full all claims of its “**public customers,**” which are all its customers other than its “**non-public customers,**” which are its affiliates and insiders who clear through the FCM in its proprietary accounts.

Priority of customer claims to, and the pro rata distribution of, customer property

1.33 Subchapter IV provides for the administration of customer property in an FCM’s bankruptcy as property of the FCM’s estate and treats the FCM’s customers as creditors of the estate, but it also requires the FCM’s bankruptcy trustee to distribute the FCM’s customer property ratably to the FCM’s customers on the basis and to the extent of such customers’ allowed net equity claims, and in priority to claims of all other creditors of the FCM, except for certain administrative expenses related to customer property (the “**statutory preference**”).³⁴ Part 190 further specifies the manner in which property of the FCM’s estate must be allocated among account classes (including the US futures account class, the cleared swaps account class and the foreign futures account class) and between the

³⁴ The statutory preference, Subchapter IV’s definition of customer property and the CFTC’s statutory authority to determine by rule or regulation which property will be included in or excluded from customer property largely track CFTC recommendations intended to address concerns that it had as to whether an FCM’s bankruptcy trustee would trace or identify, and grant the FCM’s customers a preference to, funds deposited by them to secure or margin their contracts. Prior to Subchapter IV’s enactment, the segregation requirements of the Customer Property Rules had no counterpart in US bankruptcy laws and, as a result, the special treatment of customer funds in an FCM’s bankruptcy was “open to speculation.” *Bagley* at 2378. In the absence of an express statutory preference, the CFTC had argued that a bankrupt FCM should be treated as a trustee of its customer funds and that to the extent such funds could be traced and identified, they could be reclaimed by the FCM’s customers. Although bankruptcy trustees did award preferences to customers with respect to customer funds actually held by FCMs in segregation at the time of bankruptcy, the theory under which they did so was unclear, with the preferences based on differing *ad hoc* adaptations of traditional trust law to FCMs or the application of pre-1938 law governing securities broker-dealer bankruptcies (for a description of the treatment of customers of bankrupt broker-dealers prior to 1938, see K. Kettering, *Repledge Deconstructed*, 61 U. Pitt. L. Rev. 45, 70 (Fall, 1999) [hereinafter, “**Kettering**”]. Moreover, there was no clear statement of the law. The cases in the area had resulted in vague decisions that did not clearly explain why preferences had been awarded or disallowed and those decisions had not been tested at an appellate level. In the case of customer funds not in actual segregation at the time of the bankruptcy (because, for example, they had been wrongfully diverted from segregation), customer claims to such funds were generally rejected outright, even when such funds were easily traceable, leaving customers without a priority claim and relegated to the status of general creditors. The CFTC also worried more generally that the commingling (permissible under the Customer Property Rules) of customer funds and an FCM’s own funds (in the form of its residual interest) could make it much more difficult for a trustee to trace and identify customer funds and that such commingling, together with the FCM’s right to invest customer funds and retain the profits therefrom, could result in a trustee finding that the FCM did not hold customer funds in trust for its customers and that they should not be given a preference to customer funds with which the FCM’s own funds had been commingled.

Addressing these concerns, the customer property definition “provides a basis for assuring that commodity customers receive priority claims that are coextensive with their ownership interests in funds and property held by the bankrupt FCM as defined by Section 4d(2) of the CEA.” Corcoran-Erwin, *supra* note 33, at 874. The definition establishes that “an FCM’s improper commingling of commodity customer funds, whether with its own trading accounts or other funds, does not deprive customers of priority claims to such funds wherever they can be found . . . [and] provides a basis for reaching other assets of the FCM to restore customer funds missing from an estate through diversion or other abuse.” *Id.* at 875. Moreover, Subchapter IV provides that customer property includes assets of the FCM to the extent that available segregated funds are insufficient to satisfy public customer claims without regard to whether such assets were diverted from segregation, and this result is confirmed by Part 190’s specification that customer property includes property of the FCM’s estate, including its trading or operating accounts and commodities inventory, to the extent that other enumerated categories of customer property are insufficient to fully satisfy public customer claims. *Id.* As Corcoran and Erwin explain, the customer property framework assures “that difficulties in tracing customer funds will not unfairly disadvantage customers to the benefit of the [debtor FCM’s] general creditors, establishing by rule a variation on the presumption drawn from English trust law that ‘where a wrongdoer commingles his own funds in a bank account with those of another person and thereafter makes withdrawals from that account, the wrongdoer withdrew his own funds first.’” *Id.*

March 23, 2025

FCM's public customer class and its non-public customer class (each, a "**customer class**"). Each allocated amount is then treated as a separate estate of the account class and customer class to which it is allocated. Property segregated for a specific account class may be distributed only to customers in that account class (including by means of a transfer of property to a third party on a customer's behalf, return of property to a customer or distribution to a customer of valuable property that is different than the property posted by the customer), and if the customer property for an account class is insufficient to satisfy all the net equity claims of public customers in the account class, such customer property is distributed *pro rata* to the public customers in respect of those claims. Any customer property not attributable to a specific account class, or that exceeds the amount needed to pay allowed customer net equity claims in a particular account class, is distributed to public customers in other account classes so long as there is a shortfall in those other account classes. Non-public customers do not receive any distribution of customer property so long as there is any shortfall, in any account class, of customer property needed to satisfy public customer net equity claims. The *pro rata* distribution principle means that, if there is a shortfall of customer property in an account class, all customers in the account class suffer the same proportional loss relative to their allowed net equity claims. The principle applies to all customers, including those who post as collateral specifically identifiable property.³⁵

Bulk transfers of customer contracts and funds that are not specifically identifiable property

1.34 Subchapter IV and Part 190 also contemplate prompt efforts by an FCM's bankruptcy trustee to effect transfers of all or a portion of the FCM's customer property to other FCMs. Although Subchapter IV does not expressly mandate the trustee attempt to effect transfers of customer positions (except, as described below, in the case of contracts that the trustee designates as specifically identifiable property, so long as the value of the contracts does not exceed the customer's *pro rata* share of customer property), Part 190 articulates a policy preference for porting open contracts of the debtor FCM's public customers, along with all or a portion of the customers' account equity. Part 190 requires the trustee to promptly use its best efforts to effect a bulk transfer to one or more transferee FCMs of all eligible customer accounts and customer property held by the debtor FCM for or on behalf of its customers, based on customer claims of record, no later than the seventh calendar day after the "**order for relief**," which is (i) the commencement of a voluntary case under the Code (*i.e.*, the filing of a petition), (ii) the entry of an order for relief in an involuntary case under the Code, (iii) the issuance of a protective decree with respect to the FCM under SIPA or (iv) the appointment of the FDIC as receiver of the FCM under the Orderly Liquidation Authority. To facilitate such transfers, Part 190 authorizes the trustee to conduct the FCM's business on a limited basis, with specific provisions authorizing the trustee's collection of margin from customers and payment of margin to DCOs, foreign futures brokers and other clearing intermediaries for open positions to better assure they remain open prior to transfer. As a general matter, all customer accounts (including accounts with no open contract positions) are eligible for transfer after the order for relief, other than the FCM's own account and customer accounts that are in deficit (*i.e.*, accounts with negative balances). However, Part 190 prohibits any transfer by the trustee if, after taking into account all customer property available for distribution to customers in the applicable account class at the time of transfer, the transfer would result in insufficient remaining customer property to make an equivalent percentage distribution (including all previous transfers and distributions) to all customers in the same account class. Customers whose customer accounts, contracts and funds are included in a bulk transfer have no consent rights with respect to the transferee FCM.³⁶ Part 190 requires the trustee to liquidate "as soon as practicable under the circumstances" all open contracts in any customer account that is in deficit, or for which any mark-to-market calculation would result in a deficit, or for which a customer fails to meet a margin call made by the trustee within a reasonable time. The trustee must also promptly liquidate any open contracts that have not been transferred by

³⁵ As Corcoran and Erwin explain, the *pro rata* distribution requirement "establishes a principle of equal treatment for all customers and effects a proportionate allocation of any shortfall in customer property available for distribution, a standard that accords with established law under the CEA, common law trust precepts, and the bankruptcy principle that 'equality is equity.'" Corcoran-Erwin, *supra* note 33, at 876-877.

³⁶ Any customer that objects to the selection of the transferee FCM can elect to move its account to another FCM of its own choosing following the bulk transfer away from the bankrupt FCM, as described in paragraph 1.3.

March 23, 2025

the seventh day following the order for relief (other than open contracts that are specifically identifiable property and are subject to customer instructions to transfer rather than liquidate, as discussed below).

Specifically identifiable property

Return or transfer of specifically identifiable property other than customer contracts

1.34.1 The provisions of Subchapter IV and Part 190 relating to the disposition of a customer's "**specifically identifiable property**" (as described below) establish a method for transferring such property (even if a bulk transfer of the FCM's customer accounts cannot be achieved) that give a customer some control over the disposition of the property, subject to satisfaction of conditions that are intended to ensure that the disposition does not undermine the equity of the ratable distribution of customer property. Subchapter IV refers to, but does not define, "specifically identifiable property." Rather, the CFTC is granted broad authority by CEA Section 20 to provide, by rule or regulation, that "certain cash, securities, other property, or commodity contracts are to be specifically identifiable to a particular customer in a specific capacity . . ." The CFTC has exercised this authority to define specifically identifiable property quite narrowly in Part 190 to mean the following property: (A) any security that as of the filing date is (1) is held for the account of a customer, registered in such customer's name and not transferable by delivery and has a duration or maturity date of more than 180 days or (2) is fully paid, non-exempt and identified on the FCM's books and records as held for or on behalf of the account of a customer for which no open contracts were held in the same capacity; (B) any warehouse receipt, bill of lading or other document of title that as of the filing date can be identified on the FCM's books and records as held for the account of a particular customer and is not in bearer form and is not otherwise transferable by delivery; (C) certain physical delivery property; and (D) certain open contracts in hedging accounts that the trustee elects to treat as specifically identifiable property (as described below in paragraph 1.34.2). If an order for relief has been entered, Section 190.03(c)(1) of Part 190 requires the trustee to use all reasonable efforts to promptly notify any customer whose account includes specifically identifiable property, other than open contracts, which has not been liquidated, that such property may be liquidated on and after the seventh day after the order for relief (or such other date as is specified by the trustee with the approval of the CFTC or the applicable court) if the customer has not instructed the trustee before the deadline specified in the notification to the customer to return the property. If the customer instructs the trustee to return specifically identifiable property, the customer generally must provide "substitute customer property" (consisting of cash or cash equivalents) with a value equal to the property returned. The purpose of this requirement, under which customers must effectively "buy back" their specifically identifiable property by depositing substitute customer property, is to preserve the *pro rata* distribution principle. If the specifically identifiable property consists of securities, but the customer has no open contracts, the customer may request that the trustee purchase or otherwise obtain the largest whole number of like-kind securities (*i.e.*, securities of the same class and series of an issuer), with a fair market value (inclusive of transaction costs) that does not exceed that portion of the funded balance of such customer's allowed net equity claim that constitutes a claim for securities, if like-kind securities can be purchased in a fair and orderly manner.

Transfer of customer contracts that the trustee elects to treat as specifically identifiable property

1.34.2 The trustee has the right, but not an obligation, to treat as specifically identifiable property open contracts of public customers held in hedging accounts designated as such in the FCM's records, after consulting with the CFTC and when practical under the circumstances. In the case of open contracts that the trustee elects to treat as a public customer's specifically identifiable property, Section 190.03(a)(2) of Part 190 provides that the trustee must use reasonable efforts to promptly notify the customer of its determination. If the FCM's books and records reveal a clear preference of the customer with respect to the contracts' transfer or liquidation, the trustee must endeavor, to the extent reasonably practicable, to comply with the preference. If the customer's preference cannot be clearly discerned from the FCM's books and records, the trustee must request instructions from the customer with respect to transfer or liquidation, specify a deadline for providing the instructions and further inform the customer that (i) if it does not provide the instructions by the deadline, the customer's open contracts will not

March 23, 2025

be treated as specifically identifiable property, (ii) any transfer of the contracts is subject to certain terms for distribution (described below), (iii) absent compliance with any terms imposed by the trustee or the court, the trustee may liquidate the contracts and (iv) providing instructions may not prevent the contracts from being liquidated. If the customer fails to provide the instructions to the trustee by the specified deadline, the contracts will not be treated as specifically identifiable property and they will be subject to bulk transfer or, failing that, to liquidation, as described above in paragraph 1.33. Section 190.09(d)(2) of Part 190 provides that any specifically identifiable contracts that are not required to be liquidated, and are not otherwise liquidated, may be transferred on the customer's behalf, but the customer must first deposit an equivalent value of substitute customer property to ensure full implementation of the *pro rata* distribution principle.³⁷

³⁷ Subchapter IV's provisions requiring *pro rata* distribution of customer property and facilitating transfers of customer contracts and funds to other FCMs reflect CFTC recommendations to address concerns that it had, prior to the enactment of Subchapter IV, with inequities in the distribution of funds to customers in cases involving inadequate segregation and the ability of customers to port open contracts and supporting margin and thereby maintain hedges (which was of particular importance to smaller customers, such as farmers or other producers of physical commodities, using futures to hedge their positions in the cash markets because they needed to keep their futures positions open as long as their cash positions were open). The CFTC believed that under then current law, only two alternative approaches were available for use by an FCM's bankruptcy trustee to distribute customer contracts and funds.

Strict tracing. Under the first approach, typically employed by trustees prior to the enactment of Subchapter IV, a trustee would, to the greatest extent possible, trace and return all specifically identifiable assets to customers to whom the assets were identified and then make a *pro rata* distribution to all customers of whatever residual remained after the initial distribution. The CFTC viewed this approach as preserving the hedging mechanism because specifically identified contracts and specifically identified funds margining those contracts could be readily transferred to another FCM (so long as the contracts were adequately margined). However, this strict tracing approach frequently resulted in serious inequities in the recovery of margin by (often larger, more sophisticated) customers who deposited margin in the form of securities (which were not considered fungible by the CFTC and were treated as specifically identifiable property returnable directly to such customers) versus (generally smaller, less sophisticated) customers who deposited margin in the form of cash (whose fungible nature often precluded tracing). If an FCM was inadequately segregated at the time of bankruptcy or otherwise not in a position that allowed tracing of all the cash deposited by customers, smaller cash-margin customers might recover only a small percentage of their investments upon the residual *pro rata* distribution while large customers who had posted securities margin could recover their entire investments through the return of specifically identifiable securities. This outcome was exacerbated by the Customer Property Rules in effect at the time, under which FCMs could accept securities as margin from customers but were not allowed to deposit customer securities as margin with DCOs (due to the CFTC's concern that a DCO would have no way of knowing which contracts were margined by a particular customer's securities and could not ensure against an unwitting violation on the prohibition of using one customer's assets to secure another customer's liabilities). Thus, securities posted by customers as margin remained at the FCM and were readily traceable and returned to those customers, while the cash deposited with the DCO was typically exhausted satisfying variation margin calls in the run-up to the FCM's bankruptcy, leaving little cash available to distribute to the FCM's cash customers. The CFTC stated that "the possibility that [an FCM's bankruptcy trustee] may use a strict tracing approach to distribute commodity customers' funds prevents any interpretation [or amendment] of [the Customer Property Rules] to permit a [DCO] to use the net equity in the securities deposited on behalf of one customer to margin or secure the trades of another." *Bagley* at 2395.

Strict pro rata distribution. Under the second approach, the trustee would liquidate and distribute to customers all applicable customer property in a single, strictly *pro rata* distribution. Such strict *pro rata* distribution eliminated the inequities that resulted from strict tracing, but it required the liquidation of all customer property, including the closing out of open contracts. In doing so, it destroyed the hedging mechanism for many customers since it left them with unhedged cash positions and prevented them from re-establishing hedge positions in the futures market until distribution of the FCM's estate.

CFTC recommendations. To address the shortcomings of these approaches, the CFTC recommended a third approach, as a combination of the other two approaches, which the CFTC doubted could be utilized under then current law but believed could both preserve the hedging mechanism and result in an equitable distribution of assets in the event of inadequate segregation. Subchapter IV, as enacted, reflects the CFTC's recommendations, which included, among other things, (i) *pro rata* distribution of customer property based on allowed net equity claims, (ii) a broad grant of authority to the CFTC to define by rule or regulation the customer property specifically identifiable to individual customers, (iii) tracing and return of specifically identifiable property to individual customers to the extent of each customer's *pro rata* share or, in the case of open contracts and corresponding margin, transfer to another FCM to the extent of each customer's *pro rata* share or liquidation upon the instruction or inaction of such customer, (iv) to the extent the value of specifically identifiable property, including open contracts, exceeded the value of a customer's *pro rata* share, opportunity for the customer to deposit sufficient cash to account for the differences and thereby gain the return or transfer of all such specific property. As the CFTC explained to Congress, "This [recommended approach] require[d] the return of specifically identifiable assets to the appropriate customers of the bankrupt without destroying the equity of a *pro rata* distribution, thereby protecting the unique ownership interests of commodity customers in specifically identifiable assets." *Bagley* at 2408.

March 23, 2025

1.34.3 The CFTC has recently signaled that the treatment of hedging contracts as specifically identifiable property is less likely in future FCM bankruptcies. In 2021, the CFTC amended Part 190 to provide, among other things, that an FCM's trustee has the option, and not an obligation, to designate customer contracts in a hedging account as specifically identifiable property and that to the extent that it elects not to do so, it must treat such contracts the same as other customer property subject to a bulk transfer. In its final adopting release for the amendment, the CFTC explained that giving the trustee this optionality reflected the policy preference to port all positions of all public customers. "Requiring a trustee to identify hedging accounts and provide hedging account holders the opportunity to keep their positions open may be a resource and time intensive process, which the [CFTC] believes could interfere with the trustee's ability to take prudent and timely action to manage the debtor FCM's estate to protect all of the FCM's customers."³⁸

Implications of Subchapter IV and Part 190

Administration within the FCM's estate

1.35 Subchapter IV's requirement that customer property be administered in the FCM's bankruptcy proceedings and its characterization of customer property as property of the FCM's estate and of customers as creditors (rather than owners of the customer property) should not be viewed as inconsistent with the Customer Property Rules and the statutory trusts those rules establish.³⁹ Indeed, Subchapter IV should be considered as providing a clear basis under US federal law for ensuring the efficacy of the Customer Property Rules in an FCM's bankruptcy. Administering customer property as provided in Subchapter IV and Part 190 facilitates a trustee's pursuit of avoidance actions to recover property for distribution to customers and provides a basis for assuring that customers receive priority claims that are coextensive with their ownership interests in property held by the FCM pursuant to the Customer Property Rules.⁴⁰ Additionally, the *pro rata* distribution requirement and the customer property transfer provisions assure equality of treatment of all customers and promote customer portability in a manner that could not be achieved through application of the Customer Property Rules alone.

Customer margining

1.36 Because they eliminated the risk that a customer might receive a disproportionate share of the customer funds held by the FCM in its bankruptcy simply because that customer had provided margin in the form of securities, Subchapter IV and Part 190 also allowed the CFTC to modify the Customer Property Rules so that FCMs could repledge customer securities to DCOs to secure the FCM's obligations in respect of customer contracts it clears through the DCO. Today, the FCM has significant flexibility to use an individual customer's securities margin. For example, securities deposited with the FCM as margin by a customer may be deposited by that FCM with a DCO that does not clear the customer's contracts (so long as the contracts at the DCO secured by the customer's securities are in the same account class as the customer's contracts on other DCOs), and the FCM may rehypothecate customer securities margin for cash under repo agreements (but the FCM must maintain such cash in segregation and bears sole responsibility for any losses in respect of the repos).

³⁸ 86 Fed. Reg. 19324, 19343 (April 13, 2021).

³⁹ A similar treatment occurs under SIPA, which governs the liquidation of broker-dealers who carry customer accounts. Under SIPA, cash and securities (except customer name securities delivered to a customer) received, acquired or held by or for the account of a failed broker-dealer from or for the securities accounts of the customer, and the proceeds of any such property, are allocated to customers *pro rata* in accordance with their respective net equities. 15 U.S.C. §§ 78fff-2(c)(1)(B), 78lll(4). This treatment of net equity claims in the bankruptcy of the broker-dealer does not call into question the characterization of the customer's rights prior to the bankruptcy as a property right under applicable law. *See also* note 423.

⁴⁰ The Code turns to applicable state or other non-insolvency law, in the first instance, to determine whether property is property of the bankruptcy estate. To the extent that property held by the FCM for customers were viewed as property of the customers under the CEA and applicable state law, it would not be recoverable by the bankruptcy trustee in an ordinary bankruptcy.

March 23, 2025

Customer Collateral

1.37 Under the terms of the customer agreement,⁴¹ the customer typically grants to the FCM a first priority security interest in, lien on and right of set-off against, all the rights and interests of the customer in respect of the following property, whether at the time of the grant or thereafter existing (collectively, “**Collateral**”):

- (i) the customer account, the contracts carried in or credited to the customer account and all rights to payments and deliveries in respect of such contracts;
- (ii) all cash, securities and other property credited to or held in the customer account (including any such property that is held by any DCO, FCO, foreign futures broker or other person acting for or on behalf of any of the foregoing);
- (iii) all other property of the customer received, acquired or held by or for the FCM or any DCO, FCO, foreign futures broker or other person acting for or on behalf of any of the foregoing, or due or deliverable to the FCM or customer (including amounts due from any DCO, FCO, foreign futures broker or other person acting for or on behalf of any of the foregoing), in respect of the customer account or the customer’s contracts; and
- (iv) all proceeds of the foregoing.

1.38 This security interest secures all liabilities of the customer to the FCM under the customer agreement. It may also secure liabilities of the customer to the FCM other than under the customer agreement. Furthermore, like any security interest, the security interest serves the additional purpose in the US of preventing third parties from gaining an intervening interest, or otherwise interfering, in the customer’s contracts or other property credited to the customer account.

The customer account and customer contracts

1.39 Under the New York Uniform Commercial Code (the “**UCC**”), a customer’s US futures account and foreign futures account are categorized as a “commodity account” maintained for the customer, which is “commodity customer,” by the FCM as the customer’s “commodity intermediary,” and the US futures and foreign futures carried in the customer account constitute “commodity contracts” (as each such term is defined in Article 9 of the UCC).⁴² If the FCM and customer elect to treat the customer’s cleared swaps as “financial assets,” and the customer account constitutes a “securities account” maintained for the customer by the FCM as the customer’s “securities intermediary,” then the indirect holding provisions in Part 5 of UCC Article 8 apply, and when the FCM credits cleared swaps to the customer account, the customer obtains, and is treated as an “entitlement holder” of, “security entitlements” to such cleared swaps (as each of those terms is defined in the indirect holding provisions of Article 8 of the UCC).⁴³ Commodity contracts and security entitlements are types of “investment property” and are not

⁴¹ Even prior to the adoption of the relevant provisions of the UCC, an FCM generally was viewed as having a common-law “broker’s lien” on its customers’ accounts and any property credited to those accounts.

⁴² A “**commodity account**” is defined in UCC Section 9-102(a)(15) as “an account maintained by a commodity intermediary in which a commodity contract is carried for a commodity customer.” A “**commodity contract**” is defined in UCC Section 9-102(a)(15) as a “commodity futures contract, an option on a commodity futures contract, a commodity option, or another contract if the contract or option is (A) traded on or subject to the rules of a board of trade that has been designated as a contract market for such a contract pursuant to federal commodities laws; or (B) traded on a foreign commodity board of trade, exchange, or market, and is carried on the books of a commodity intermediary for a commodity customer.” A “**commodity intermediary**” is defined in UCC Section 9-102(a)(17) to include a person that “is registered as a futures commission merchant under federal commodities laws,” and “**commodity customer**” is defined as a “person for which a commodity intermediary carries a commodity contract on its books.”

⁴³ **UCC Article 8.** The indirect holding provisions of Article 8 of the UCC set out rules that govern how interests in securities and other financial assets that persons indirectly hold through intermediaries are evidenced and transferred. Holding financial assets indirectly means that ownership of the financial assets is evidenced by book entries in accounts maintained by securities intermediaries for their customers.

See R. Hakes, *UCC Article 8: Will the Indirect Holding of Securities Survive the Light of Day*, 35 Loy. L.A. L. Rev. 661, 664 n.2 (2002) [hereinafter *Hakes*].

Financial asset. A “**financial asset**” is defined in UCC Section 8-102(9) to include a security, as well as “any property that is held by a securities intermediary for another person in a securities account if the securities intermediary has expressly agreed with the other person that the property is to be treated as a financial asset under . . . Article 8” and so long as the UCC does not prohibit the treatment of the type of property in this manner. In this regard, UCC Section 8-103(f) provides that a “commodity contract” as defined in UCC Section 9-102(a)(15) is not a “security” or a “financial asset” as defined in UCC Article 8. Accordingly, because futures are commodity contracts, they may not be treated as financial assets. Cleared swaps, however, do not meet the definition of “commodity contract” (because they are not traded on boards of trade or exchanges) and they are not otherwise precluded from treatment as financial assets, and FCMs and their customers typically agree in Customer Agreements that the customers’ cleared swaps will be treated as financial assets.

Securities account maintained by securities intermediary. In order for any financial asset to be subject to the indirect holding provisions in Part 5 of Article 8, the financial asset must be held in a securities account maintained by the FCM as a securities intermediary of the customer, and this is the case regardless of whether the financial asset is a security or is some other type of property, such as a customer’s cleared swaps, that the parties affirmatively elect to treat as a financial asset. A “**securities account**” is defined in UCC Section 8-501(a) as “an account to which a financial asset is or may be credited in accordance with an agreement under which the person maintaining the account undertakes to treat the person for whom the account is maintained as entitled to exercise the rights comprising the financial asset.” UCC Section 8-102(14) defines a “**securities intermediary**” to include “a person, such as a bank or broker, that in the ordinary course of its business maintains securities accounts for others and is acting in that capacity.”

Customer account – a hybrid account. A customer’s futures, cleared swaps and securities and cash margin will all be credited to the customer account, which is viewed by the parties as a “commodity account.” This raises the question, given that futures are commodity contracts credited to a commodity account and cannot be financial assets credited to a securities account, of whether the customer account can be both a commodity account and a securities account. In this regard, the S&C Memo concludes that “[t]here is no reason under the UCC that a single account cannot be a ‘hybrid’ account addressed by both the commodity account and securities account provisions of Article 9 of the UCC.” See S&C Memo at 80-81.

Security entitlement. When a financial asset (whether a security or any other financial asset, such as a cleared swap, that the parties have elected to treat as a financial asset) is credited to the customer account, and the customer account constitutes a securities account maintained for the customer by the FCM as its securities intermediary, the customer acquires, and becomes an “entitlement holder” of, a “security entitlement” to the financial asset. UCC Section 8-102(17) defines a “**security entitlement**” as “the rights and property interest of an entitlement holder with respect to a financial asset specified in Part 5 [of Article 8, which contains Article 8’s provisions on security entitlements].” An “**entitlement holder**” is defined in UCC Section 8-102(7) as “the person identified in the records of a securities intermediary as the person having a security entitlement against the securities intermediary.”

Nature of security entitlement. Official Comment 1 to UCC Section 8-503 makes it clear that “[a] security entitlement is not a claim to a specific thing; it is a package of rights and interests that a person has against the person’s securities intermediary and the property held by the intermediary.” The rights that are part of a security entitlement are the entitlement holder’s rights under UCC Sections 8-505 through 8-508, which are the provisions that set out the duties of an intermediary to see to it that an entitlement holder receives all of the economic and corporate rights that comprise the financial asset. These duties include, among other things, duties to obtain and pass through to the entitlement holder payments and distributions in respect of the financial asset, to exercise ownership rights with respect to the financial asset on behalf of the entitlement holder if directed to do so by it, to obtain and maintain the financial asset in a quantity corresponding to the aggregate of all security entitlements it has established in favor of its entitlement holders with respect to that financial asset and to comply with entitlement orders and directions of the entitlement holder.

Pro rata property interest. A customer’s property interest with respect to a particular financial asset is a *pro rata* property interest in all interests in that financial asset held by the FCM as a securities intermediary for all its customers that have security entitlements to that financial asset. UCC Section 8-503(a) states, “To the extent necessary for a securities intermediary to satisfy all security entitlements with respect to a particular financial asset, all interests in that financial asset held by the securities intermediary are held by the securities intermediary for the entitlement holders . . .” UCC Section 8-503(b) adds that “[a]n entitlement holder’s property interest with respect to a particular financial asset . . . is a *pro rata* property interest in all interests in that financial asset held by the securities intermediary, without regard to the time the entitlement holder acquired the security entitlement or the time the securities intermediary acquired the interest in that financial asset.” Official Comment 1 explains that “[UCC Section 8-503(b)] makes clear that the property interest described in [UCC Section 8-503(a)] is an interest held in common by all entitlement holders who have entitlements to a particular security or other financial asset . . . [and] all entitlement holders have a *pro rata* interest in whatever positions in that financial asset the intermediary holds.”

Issue-by-issue basis. Official Comment 1 to UCC 8-503 further specifies that “[a]n entitlement holder’s property interests under this [Section 8-503] is an interest with respect to a specific *issue* of securities or financial assets.” [Emphasis added.] “For example,” Official Comment 1 states, “customers of a firm who have positions in XYZ common stock have security entitlements with respect to the XYZ common stock held by the intermediary, while other customers who have positions in ABC common stock have security entitlements with respect to the ABC common stock held by the intermediary.” Hakes explains:

Subsection 8-503(b) describes the entitlement holder’s property interest in a financial asset as a ‘*pro rata* property interest’ in all interests in that financial asset held by the securities intermediary. Although it is not explicitly stated, the *pro rata* interest is implicitly limited

“general intangibles” as those terms are defined in UCC Article 9.⁴⁴ As such, the FCM’s security interest in them may be perfected by control, which it has automatically by virtue of its status as commodity intermediary with

to the amount of the financial asset credited to the securities account. In other words, if the security entitlement is to 100 shares of IBM stock and the securities intermediary holds 100,000 shares of IBM stock, the security entitlement is a 1/1000 interest in each share of IBM stock held by the intermediary. It is important to note that this *pro rata* interest extends to financial assets acquired by the securities intermediary before the entitlement holder acquired the security entitlement as well as to those acquired thereafter. Thus, the fungible bulk in which an entitlement holder has a *pro rata* interest regularly changes. This *pro rata* interest in the fungible bulk of a particular financial asset, however, is not a claim to a specific asset held by the financial intermediary.

Hakes, *supra*, at 688. Both the examples provided by Official Comment 1 to UCC Section 8-503 and by Hakes suggest a customer holds a property interest only in cleared swaps that the FCM clears on behalf of the customer. Neither example suggests that the customer has a property interest in *all* cleared swaps of *all* customers of the FCM, including cleared swaps that are not cleared on behalf of the customer. The conclusion that a customer has property interests only in cleared swaps cleared on its behalf comports with Kettering’s observation that “[the indirect holding provisions of UCC Article 8] provide that each customer . . . of a securities intermediary has a proportionate property interest in financial assets held by the intermediary for the customer’s account (determined on an issue-by-issue basis, rather than by throwing all securities into a single pot as per the model of former [and current statutes governing the liquidation of bankrupt securities brokers]).” Kettering, *supra* note 34, at 107.

Enforcement of entitlement holder’s property interest. Official Comment 2 to UCC Section 8-503 states, “Although [UCC Section 8-503] recognizes that the entitlement holders of a securities intermediary have a property interest in the financial assets held by the intermediary, the incidents of this property interest are established by the rules of Article 8, not by common law property concepts.” Article 8 provides that the property interest included in a security entitlement may be enforced against the intermediary only by the entitlement holder’s exercise of its rights against the securities intermediary arising from its duties under UCC Sections 8-505 through 8-508. Additionally, the entitlement holder can look only to its intermediary for the performance of these duties. Official Comment 2 to Section 8-503 states, “The entitlement holder cannot assert rights directly against other persons, such as other intermediaries through whom the intermediary holds the positions, or third parties to whom the intermediary may have wrongfully transferred interests, except in extremely unusual circumstances where the third party was itself a participant in the wrongdoing [and the intermediary is in insolvency proceedings].” Creditors of a debtor entitlement holder are similarly precluded from “looking through” the holder’s securities intermediary (UCC Section 8-112(c) states, “The interest of a debtor in a security entitlement may be reached by a creditor only by legal process upon the securities intermediary with whom the debtor’s securities account is maintained . . .”).

Insolvency of securities intermediary. Official Comment 1 to Section 8-503 makes it clear that if a securities intermediary is insolvent, applicable insolvency law, and *not* Article 8, will determine how its assets are to be distributed. Official Comment 1 states:

Although [UCC Section 8-503] describes the property interest of entitlement holders in the assets held by the intermediary, it does not necessarily determine how property held by a failed intermediary will be distributed in insolvency proceedings. If the intermediary fails and its affairs are being administered in an insolvency proceeding, the applicable insolvency law governs how the various parties having claims against the firm are treated. For example, the distributional rules for stockbroker liquidation proceedings under the [Code and SIPA] provide that all customer property [protected by the SEC’s customer protection regime] is distributed *pro rata* among all customers in proportion to the dollar value of their total positions, rather than dividing the property on an issue-by-issue basis. For intermediaries that are not subject to the [Code and SIPA], other insolvency law would determine what distribution rule is applied.

As discussed above in paragraphs 1.32 through 1.36, in the case of an FCM’s bankruptcy, the distribution of its customer property, including financial assets, such as cleared swaps, that it holds for its customers as their securities intermediary under Article 8, would be governed by Subchapter IV and Part 190; the property would be distributed *pro rata* among all customers in proportion to their allowed net equity claims.

US Federal book-entry security regulations. To the extent that securities credited to the customer account consist of bills, notes and bonds issued by the U.S. Treasury Department or securities issued by government-sponsored enterprises such as the Federal National Mortgage Association and the Federal Home Loan Mortgage Corporation, US federal regulations may supersede the UCC with respect to certain matters. Such regulations define and use the terms “security entitlement” and “securities intermediary” in a manner that parallels the corresponding definitions in Article 8. *See* Section X of the S&C Memorandum.

Hague Convention. Section X of the S&C Memo discusses the treatment of a customer’s futures and cleared swaps as “securities” within the meaning of the Convention on the Law Applicable to Certain Rights in Respect of Securities Held with an Intermediary, July 5, 2006, 46 I.L.M. 649 (the “**Hague Convention**”). If applicable, the Hague Convention specifies the choice of law to govern certain aspects relating to the attachment and perfection of the security interest. The S&C Memo addresses those matters under New York law. The status of the cleared swaps as “securities” under the Hague Convention will be determined by the provisions of that treaty, whether or not the FCM and the customer make a financial asset election with respect to the customer’s cleared swaps. The S&C Memo explains that the Hague Convention defines “securities” to include not only “shares” and “bonds,” but also “other financial instruments or financial assets (other than cash), or any interest therein,” and that while the Hague Convention does not define “financial instruments” or “financial assets,” the *Explanatory Report on the Hague Convention on the Law Applicable to certain Rights in Respect of Securities Held with an Intermediary* “states that exchange-traded financial futures and options, and credit derivatives, [c]learly fall[] within the definition.” S&C Memo at 83.

⁴⁴ UCC Section 9-102(a) defines “**investment property**” as “a security, whether certificated or uncertificated, security entitlement, securities account, commodity contract, or commodity contract.” “**General intangible**,” as defined in UCC Section 9-102(a), is a residual

March 23, 2025

respect to the customer's futures and as securities intermediary with respect to the customer's cleared swaps. If the FCM has control of all security entitlements or commodity contracts carried in a securities account or commodity account, the FCM has control of the securities account and the commodity account and its security interest in each of them is perfected by virtue of such control.

Cash Collateral

1.40 Section X of the S&C Memo discusses different ways by which the FCM may perfect its security interest in the customer's Collateral consisting of cash (which may represent cash deposited by the customer with the FCM as margin, as well as cash accruing to the customer as a result of its futures or cleared swaps). The S&C Memo observes, as an initial matter, that under the common law upon which the FCM-customer relationship is based, the commingling of customer funds on an account class basis by the FCM converts the customer's property interest in its cash margin to a debt claim against the FCM for its repayment of the cash, which may be set off against amounts owed by the customer to the FCM, including amounts to indemnify or reimburse the FCM for trading losses. Additionally, as a consequence of the Customer Property Rules relating to permitted uses and the operation of the three statutory trusts, the FCM generally need not rely upon its security interest in order to utilize the customer's cash to satisfy obligations to DCOs and foreign futures brokers arising in the course of liquidating the customer account.

1.41 Nevertheless, it is market practice for the FCM to perfect its security interest in the customer's rights and interests in respect of Collateral consisting of cash, and there are several methods by which it may do so.

1.41.1 Cash margin delivered to the FCM is initially deposited in a segregated account or separate account of the FCM maintained with its settlement bank. For purposes of the UCC, given that the cash is subject to immediate withdrawal by the FCM, the segregated account or separate account constitutes a "deposit account," and the FCM may perfect its security interest in the cash pursuant to the UCC's rules applicable to deposit accounts. Those rules specify that perfection of a security interest in a deposit account may be achieved by obtaining control over the deposit account, which the FCM obtains by virtue of the fact the segregated account or separate account is maintained by the FCM's settlement bank in the name of the FCM. Perfection of the FCM's security interest in cash would cease when the cash is disbursed from the segregated account unless the FCM's control is maintained in some. However, when the cash is transferred to the FCM's omnibus customer margin account at a DCO or the FCM's account at a foreign futures broker, the DCO or foreign futures broker, by crediting the cash margin to the FCM's omnibus customer margin account, acknowledges that it controls the funds on behalf of the FCM, thereby granting the FCM control over the funds while credited to that account.

1.41.2 Furthermore, by perfecting its security interest in the customer's US futures account or foreign futures account, each of which, as noted above, is a commodity account under the UCC, the FCM should perfect its security interest in all cash balances credited to the account, without further action. Official Comment 4 to UCC Section 9-108 states that "given the broad definition of 'securities account' . . . a security interest in a securities account also includes all other rights of the debtor against the securities intermediary arising out of the securities account [including] credit balances due to the debtor from the securities intermediary, whether or not they are proceeds of a security entitlement." Thus, the UCC acknowledges, in the case of a securities account, that cash balances credited to that account are an indivisible part of that account, perfection of a security interest in which is achieved when the security interest in the securities account is perfected. There is no reason that the same analysis would not apply to a commodity account.

1.41.3 If the FCM and customer elect to treat the customer's cleared swaps account as a "securities account" in respect of which the FCM acts as the customer's "securities intermediary" and they further elect to treat

category of personal property that is not included in the other types of collateral (including investment property) defined in UCC Article 9. If, for some reason, the FCM and its customer did *not* make a financial asset election with respect to cleared swaps, then the customer's cleared swaps would be "general intangibles" under the UCC.

March 23, 2025

all cash credited thereto as a “financial asset,” the customer will obtain a security entitlement to the cash and the FCM’s security interest in such security entitlement will be perfected as long as the FCM has control over the account (as described in paragraph 1.39). If the FCM and customer elect to treat the cleared swaps credited to the customer’s cleared swaps account as financial assets credited to a securities account maintained by the FCM as the customer’s securities intermediary, but the parties do not make a financial asset election with respect to cash credited to the account, it is arguable that by obtaining control over the account and perfecting its security interest in the account, the FCM should perfect its security interest in all cash credited to the account as described in paragraph 1.41.2.

Securities Collateral

1.42 If the customer delivers margin in the form of securities, the FCM will credit the securities to the customer account, and if the customer account constitutes a securities account maintained for the customer by the FCM acting as the customer’s securities intermediary, the customer will obtain security entitlement(s) to the securities. As the security entitlements are investment property (rather than general intangibles) for purposes of UCC Article 9, the FCM’s security interest in them may be perfected by control, which the FCM has automatically by virtue of its status as the customer’s securities intermediary.⁴⁵ UCC Section 9-314 provides that the security interest remains perfected until the FCM does not have control, *and* the customer is or becomes the entitlement holder; accordingly, rehypothecation or other disposition of the security entitlement does not affect the perfection of the FCM’s security interest unless the customer once again has control of the security entitlement.⁴⁶

⁴⁵ Securities held through an intermediary are also “securities” within the meaning of the Hague Convention.

⁴⁶ UCC § 9-314(c).

FCM’s rights and practices with respect to repledge and rehypothecation. The terms of a base account agreement typically grant the FCM broad rights to repledge, rehypothecate or dispose of the customer’s Collateral consisting of securities (although such rights are subject to “applicable law,” including the Customer Property Rules, which require the FCM to segregate or set aside any proceeds from rehypothecating or disposing of the securities). Base account agreements also typically provide that the FCM is under no obligation to return to a customer the same securities it deposited as margin (*e.g.*, a security with the same ISIN/CUSIP number), but the FCM may agree to provide equivalent securities, if practicable. For example, if the customer deposited with the FCM 5-year US Treasuries, the FCM would endeavor to return 5-year US Treasuries if practicable, of the same aggregate value but not necessarily the same ISIN/CUSIP. Additionally, under the Customer Property Rules, when the FCM makes its daily computations of the amount of US futures customer funds required to be in Segregated Accounts, it is required, as a condition to offsetting any net deficit in a customer’s futures account against the current market value of readily marketable securities credited to the account, to maintain a security interest in the securities “including a written authorization to liquidate the securities at the [FCM’s] discretion.” CFTC Rule 1.32(b). As noted in paragraph 1.36, the Customer Property Rules also permit the FCM to repledge customer securities margin to DCOs as margin to secure the FCM’s obligations to the DCOs in respect of customer contracts cleared through the DCOs and afford the FCM significant flexibility to repledge a customer’s securities margin to a DCO that does not clear the customer’s contracts and to rehypothecate customer securities for cash in repo agreements.

When a customer deposits securities margin with the FCM, the customer will cause its securities intermediary to transfer the securities to the FCM’s securities intermediary, which will credit a securities entitlement to the securities to the FCM’s own securities account maintained by the intermediary. The FCM will also credit a securities entitlement to the securities to the customer account it maintains for the customer, which is a securities account maintained for the customer by the FCM as its securities intermediary to the extent that it relates to assets other than commodity contracts. If the FCM repledges the securities to a DCO, the FCM will cause the FCM’s securities intermediary to transfer the securities to the DCO’s securities intermediary, but the FCM will not debit the securities from the customer account. As a result, an imbalance may be created between the securities of a particular issue that are credited to the FCM’s securities account maintained at the FCM’s securities intermediary and the securities of that issue that are credited to the FCM’s customer accounts. However, securities repledged to the DCO are held in segregation by the DCO and they continue to constitute segregated funds of the FCM. Similarly, if the FCM rehypothecates customer securities margin (*e.g.*, by means of repo transactions), the FCM will cause its securities intermediary to transfer the securities to the relevant transferee (or its securities intermediary) but the FCM will not debit the securities from the customer accounts. Similar to a repledge, the rehypothecation may create an imbalance between the securities of a particular issue credited to the FCM’s securities account at its securities intermediary and the securities of that issue credited to its customer accounts. In contrast to repledged securities, however, the rehypothecated securities will not continue to constitute segregated funds of the FCM. But, as described in note 19, the FCM is required by the Customer Property Rules with respect to permitted investments to maintain the proceeds of the rehypothecation in segregation to ensure that there is sufficient value in the FCM’s segregated funds to cover all customer claims, including in the FCM’s bankruptcy.

2 Legal relationships between FCM, customer and DCO (or foreign futures broker) post-customer default and the customer account liquidation process

2.1 As noted in paragraph 1.11, the FCM holds the customer's contracts as agent-trustee under the direction of its principal, the customer, subject to and in accordance with the customer agreement. When the customer defaults (including upon an insolvency), the FCM is no longer obliged to follow the customer's instructions⁴⁷ and is permitted to act in its own interest. In essence, the FCM is no longer bound to act as agent of the customer, although it continues to hold the contracts in trust for the customer and the customer funds in accordance with the Customer Property Rules. The FCM may close out or otherwise liquidate the customer's contracts and liquidate any related margin or Collateral, as described below. Although the FCM's right to take these actions arises out of the same contract (the customer agreement) that establishes the agency relationship, the FCM does not take these actions as the customer's agent. Rather, the FCM exercises the authority given to it under the CEA, the contractual rights given to it in the customer agreement, the relevant DCO rules (or the clearing agreement between the FCM and its foreign futures broker) and the common law of agency, to protect itself from the liabilities and losses that it would otherwise suffer as a result of having entered into the contracts and acted as the customer's agent. In doing so, the

Repledge and rehypothecation and FCM's duties as securities intermediary. The imbalances described above that result from the FCM's repledge and rehypothecation of customer securities would appear, at first blush, to be inconsistent with UCC Section 8-504(a), which imposes upon a securities intermediary a duty to obtain and maintain a financial asset "in a quantity corresponding to the aggregate of all security entitlements it has established in favor of its entitlement holders with respect to that financial asset." However, UCC Section 8-509 additionally provides that if a duty of a securities intermediary under Part 5 of Article 8, including a duty under UCC Section 8-504, is the subject of some "other statute, regulation, or rule, compliance with that statute, regulation, or rule satisfies the duty." As the Official Comment to UCC Section 8-509 explains:

[UCC Article 8] is not a comprehensive statement of the law governing the relationship between . . . securities intermediaries and their customers. Most of the law governing that relationship is the common law of contract and agency, supplemented or supplanted by regulatory law. [UCC Article 8] deals only with the most basic commercial/property law principles governing the relationship. Although [UCC Article 8 specifies] certain duties of securities intermediaries to entitlement holders, the point [of such specification] is to identify what it means to have a security entitlement, not to specify the details of performance of these duties. For many intermediaries, regulatory law specifies in great detail the intermediary's obligations on such matters as safekeeping of customer property . . . and the like. To avoid any conflict between the general statement of duties in [UCC Article 8] and the specific statement of intermediaries' obligations in such regulatory schemes, [UCC Section 8-509] provides that compliance with applicable regulation constitutes compliance with the duties specified in [UCC Article 8].

The Customer Property Rules constitute such a regulatory scheme. The FCM's compliance with the segregation requirements of the Customer Property Rules (including the requirement to maintain the proceeds of rehypothecation in segregation) satisfies the FCM's duty under UCC Section 8-504(a). Additionally, UCC Section 8-504(b) prohibits a securities intermediary from granting any security interests in a financial asset it is obligated to maintain pursuant to UCC Section 8-504(a), "[e]xcept to the extent otherwise agreed by its entitlement holder." The FCM's repledge of customer securities to a DCO is consistent with its duty under UCC Section 8-504(b) because it is authorized by the customer in its customer agreement. Thus, by complying with the Customer Property Rules and with the Customer Agreement, the FCM abides by its duties as a securities intermediary with respect to a customer's securities margin, including its duties pursuant to UCC Section 8-504.

Repledge and rehypothecation and customer's property interest. Official Comment 3 to UCC Section 9-314 states that "[i]n a transaction in which a secured party who has control grants a security interest in investment property or sells outright the investment property, by virtue of the debtor's consent or applicable legal rules, a purchaser from the secured party typically will cut off the debtor's rights in the investment property or be immune from the debtor's claims." Official Comment 3 continues, "If the investment property is a security, the debtor normally would retain no interest in the security, and a claim of the debtor against the secured party for redemption . . . or otherwise with respect to the security would be a purely personal claim." Official Comment 3 adds that "[i]f the investment property transferred by the secured party is a financial asset in which the debtor had a security entitlement credited to a securities account maintained with the secured party as a securities intermediary, the debtor's claim against the secured party could arise as a part of its securities account notwithstanding its personal nature [and] would be analogous to a credit balance in the securities account [assuming the parties have not made a financial asset election with respect to cash credited to the customer account], which is a component of the securities account even though it is a personal claim against the intermediary . . ." Kettering, however, posits that an alternative view might be that, following the repledge or sale by the secured party/securities intermediary, the debtor has a security entitlement to the secured party's redemption obligation, which is its personal obligation, to the debtor. See Kettering, *supra* note 34, at 219.

⁴⁷ The FCM's obligation to follow the customer's instructions is not unconditional even before the customer's default. It is common for Customer Agreements to provide that the FCM may decline to accept customer orders in certain circumstances, e.g., when doing so would result in a breach of a trading or position limit. Furthermore, an agent (including an agent-trustee) may take action to protect itself in the case of its principal's default. The FCM may also be entitled to liquidate the customer contracts in some non-default scenarios.

March 23, 2025

FCM is entitled to prefer its own interest to that of its customer and to act without seeking customer consent with respect to the self-protective steps it takes.

2.2 As the FCM holds the contracts for the benefit of the customer, the FCM must account to the customer (as the beneficial owner) for all profits and losses (on a net basis) arising out of the contracts. As described in paragraphs 1.19 and 1.20, it is also entitled to reimburse itself for any losses or costs incurred or indemnification rights to which it is entitled out of segregated funds (or separate account funds) pursuant to the CEA and the terms of the customer agreement, consistent with the terms of the applicable statutory trust, including the provisions of the Customer Property Rules that authorize the FCM to use the customer funds held subject to the statutory trust for permitted uses.

Default and remedial provisions

2.3 The base account agreement contains a section identifying one or more events of default (whether or not described in the agreement as “events of default”), the effect of which is to give the FCM the right to exercise remedies in respect of the contracts and customer funds credited to the customer account. In general, those defaults include defaults predicated on (i) the customer’s filing under applicable bankruptcy or similar insolvency laws, (ii) the filing of a petition for the commencement of involuntary proceedings in respect of the customer under applicable bankruptcy or similar insolvency laws, which filing results in a judgment of insolvency or bankruptcy or an order for relief, and (iii) the appointment of an administrator, conservator, receiver or similar official in respect of the customer or all or substantially all of its assets. The CDA provides that a default, event of default or other similar condition or event under the terms of the base account agreement gives the FCM the right to exercise remedies in respect of the cleared swaps and cleared swaps customer funds credited to the customer account.

2.4 The base account agreement typically provides that upon the occurrence of an event of default, the FCM has the right to, among other things, (1) close out or otherwise liquidate the customer’s open positions in its contracts, and hedge risk incurred by the FCM in connection with such event of default, by any reasonable method, including by means of entering into offsetting contracts, risk-reducing contracts or hedging contracts, and by valuing any contracts entered into by the FCM (“**Position Liquidation**”), (2) treat the customer’s obligations to the FCM to be due and immediately payable and net or set off any obligations of the customer to the FCM with or against any obligations of the FCM to the customer, and (3) sell, liquidate or otherwise dispose of the customer’s collateral consisting of securities and other non-cash assets and apply the proceeds therefrom to, or net or set off the value of such proceeds with or against, any amounts due from the customer to the FCM (“**Margin Liquidation**”).⁴⁸ The CDA provides the FCM with comparable remedies upon the occurrence of an event of default. See the S&C Memo, Section XI.

Position Liquidation and Margin Liquidation

2.5 There are multiple Position Liquidation methods available to the FCM to close out or otherwise liquidate the customer’s open positions in futures or cleared swaps contracts. Each of the methods seeks to “remove” or “close out” the position from the relevant omnibus customer positions account (whether at a DCO or FCO).

2.5.1 For example, subject to DCO or FCO rules and operational feasibility, a FCM may close out an open position by:

- (i) offsetting it with an equal and opposite contract (an “**offsetting contract**”) executed by or on behalf of the FCM (or by the FCM’s foreign futures broker upon the instruction of the FCM), which contract may be either (x) directly credited to the FCM’s omnibus customer positions account with the DCO (or the foreign futures broker’s omnibus customer positions

⁴⁸ As used herein, “Margin Liquidation” refers to sale, liquidation or other disposition of the customer’s securities or other non-cash Collateral other than the customer’s contracts.

account maintained by the FCO) in which the customer's open position is carried or (y) initially credited to the FCM's house account and subsequently transferred to the FCM's omnibus customer positions account resulting, in either case, upon recordation in the omnibus customer positions account, in cancelation of both the original position and the offsetting contract; or

- (ii) causing the relevant DCO or FCO to debit or otherwise remove the position from the FCM's omnibus customer positions account (or the foreign futures broker's omnibus customer positions account maintained by the FCO) by book-entry transfer of the position to either the FCM's house account or a third party's account, which in either case may be completed as a single position transfer or as part of a transfer of a portfolio of open positions.

2.5.2 In addition to the close-out methods available to the FCM, some of which are described above, the FCM also may enter into (or cause the FCM's foreign futures broker to enter into) one or more contracts in order to hedge or otherwise manage risks it incurs in connection with the liquidation of the customer account. These hedging contracts may be executed in either the FCM's omnibus customer positions account or the FCM's house account, or the foreign futures broker's omnibus customer positions account maintained by the FCO, in each case, as necessary.

2.5.3 Under all close-out and hedging methods, the FCM must determine the related gains and losses realized and make corresponding debits or credits to the cash balance of the customer account. The Position Liquidation method has implications for the determination of gains and losses realized in connection with the close-out, which may or may not correspond to the value of such positions recorded by the applicable DCO or foreign clearing organization.

2.6 In addition to Position Liquidation, the FCM will exercise its Margin Liquidation rights to liquidate the securities and other non-cash assets credited to the customer account (to the extent necessary to generate cash proceeds to cover any deficit or debit balance). If the non-cash property has been deposited as margin with a DCO, or has been rehypothecated, then the FCM may either retrieve such property by exercising rights of substitution (or closing open positions) and liquidate it, or determine the value of the property by reference to market prices or in some other commercially reasonable manner, and credit the customer for that value.

Legal characterization of Position Liquidation and Margin Liquidation

2.7 In effecting Position Liquidation, the FCM exercises its contractual rights as principal vis-à-vis the DCO under the relevant DCO rules (or the clearing agreement between the FCM and its foreign futures broker), as permitted under the customer agreement. In doing so, the FCM acts as principal in the exercise of its contractual rights under the customer agreement (and in accordance with the terms of the applicable DCO rules or clearing agreement with the foreign futures broker), and not as agent of the customer or pursuant to any power of attorney granted by the customer. This process is also not a foreclosure, and the FCM need not rely on its security interest in the customer's rights and interests in respect of the contracts to effect their close-out or liquidation.⁴⁹

2.8 Similarly, in using customer funds, including the customer's securities and other non-cash margin, to satisfy amounts due to the DCO, or to other parties, in the course of liquidating the customer's contracts, the FCM is exercising its right, granted under the Customer Property Rules, to "withdraw[] and appl[y]" customer funds to "to margin, guarantee, secure, transfer, adjust, or settle the contracts or trades of such customers, or resulting market

⁴⁹ In other words, the FCM, as the contractual counterparty to the DCO (or foreign futures broker) under, and the holder of legal title to, the customer's contracts, will exercise contractual rights granted to it by the DCO (or foreign futures broker) to close the customer's open positions in the contracts, which will thereby terminate the customer's beneficial interest in the contracts. However, as noted in paragraph 1.37, the FCM also has a perfected security interest in the customer's rights and interests in respect of the contracts and it could elect to exercise its rights as a secured party under the UCC to enforce the security interest and sell, liquidate or otherwise dispose of the customer's contracts.

March 23, 2025

positions, with the clearinghouse organization of such contract market or derivatives transaction execution facility or with any member of such contract market or derivatives transaction execution facility.” Again, this process is not a foreclosure, and the FCM need not rely on its security interest in the customer funds consisting of securities to effect their liquidation or use them in this manner.⁵⁰

Determination of account

Calculation of (i) a credit or debit balance in respect of each account class within the customer account and (ii) an aggregate credit or debit balance in respect of all account classes within the customer account on a combined basis

2.9 Upon any Position Liquidation, the net cumulative gain (or loss) realized with respect to each position in the customer’s contracts, and any related payments to or from the customer account, will increase (or decrease) the customer’s cash balance. Upon any Margin Liquidation, as the customer’s securities and other non-cash assets are liquidated, or the value of such non-cash assets credited to the customer account is determined, the resulting liquidation proceeds or values will also increase the cash balance. The cash balance will also be increased or decreased by other applicable credits and debits, including credits in respect of close-out amounts paid to the FCM’s house account and other amounts due to the customer and debits in respect of amounts payable to the FCM, including chargeable costs, including reimbursements to the FCM for close-out amounts paid by the FCM with its own funds to third parties and other costs and expenses incurred in connection with the FCM’s exercise of remedies.⁵¹

2.10 The FCM will determine a single cash balance based on such debits and credits (the “**Determination of Account**”). A negative cash balance will constitute a debit balance payable by the customer to the FCM. A positive cash balance will constitute a credit balance payable by the FCM to the customer.⁵² If the customer account includes only one account class, then there is a single Determination of Account. If the customer account comprises multiple account classes, then there will be a separate Determination of Account for each account class and, unless the customer agreement provides otherwise, the FCM will aggregate or offset the credit balances or debit balances of all account classes to determine a single aggregate credit or debit balance in respect of the customer account.

Legal characterization of the Determination of Account

Contractual accounting

2.11 Consistent with the status of the customer account as a mutual open account, the customer account is established on the basis that the individual debits and credits in the customer account represent a connected series of entries of reciprocal charges and allowances that are not to be considered independently but rather as a continuation of a related series generating a running balance, and that upon the liquidation and closing of the customer account, the final cash balance in the customer account constitute a single indivisible debt claim by one

⁵⁰ Although the FCM may effect Margin Liquidation pursuant to the authority granted to it under the Customer Property Rules and the customer agreement, the FCM may also exercise its rights as a secured party under the UCC, enforce its security interest in the customer’s rights and interests in respect of collateral consisting of securities and other non-cash assets and sell, liquidate or otherwise dispose of that collateral in a commercially reasonable disposition (UCC § 9-610(a), (b)), and may itself purchase (or “buy in”) the collateral at a public disposition or, if the collateral is of a kind that is customarily sold on a recognized market or the subject of widely distributed standard price quotations, at a private disposition (UCC § 9-610(c)).

⁵¹ Any funds received from a DCO or other parties in connection with Position Liquidation or Margin Liquidation must be held in accordance with the Customer Property Rules. As discussed in paragraph 1.19, the Customer Property Rules expressly permit the FCM to apply such funds to permitted uses, including to guarantee, transfer and settle the customer’s contracts.

⁵² Section 7 of the CDA, which covers events of default and remedies, sets out how a “net termination amount” would be calculated. However, the events of default and remedies section in a base account agreement will typically not specify how the cash balance is calculated when the customer’s futures account is liquidated (because the process for that calculation would presumably be part of the operation of the customer account inferred from the course of dealing between the parties prior to the customer’s default, industry practice and applicable law, including the margining standards). See paragraphs 1.28 through 1.31.

March 23, 2025

party against the other, as discussed in paragraph 1.6. Accordingly, the FCM's Determination of Account may be viewed as merely an accounting procedure to ascertain what that debt claim is, by calculating the result of applying the debits and credits made to the customer account cash balance, rather than the set-off of independent obligations to bring about a single debt claim. This characterization would apply both to the calculation of the final cash balance for each account class within a customer account, and to the calculation of the final cash balance for all the account classes on a combined basis.⁵³

Enforcement of the FCM's security interest in the customer's Collateral, netting and set-off

2.12 Alternatively, the FCM could achieve a final Determination of Account pursuant to its right to enforce its security interest in the credits made to the customer account to satisfy the customer's obligations in respect of the debits made to the customer account, or by exercising its rights of setoff or netting, or some combination of these remedies. As noted in paragraph 2.4, all of these are available remedies under the customer agreement and the customer agreement provides that that these remedies are cumulative and not exclusive and that the FCM is entitled to elect the remedy or remedies it uses.

2.13 As noted in paragraph 1.37, the FCM is granted a security interest in the customer Collateral, which includes any cash credited to the customer account (including the customer account's credit balance payable to the customer). The FCM may enforce that security interest to apply trading gains against trading losses or other chargeable costs, to apply the aggregate cash balance in the customer account, or the customer accounts relating to the different account classes, to amounts owed to the FCM and to apply credit balances against debit balances across account classes. See the S&C Memo, Section XI.

2.14 The Determination of Account with respect to the customer account could be viewed as involving netting or set-off of the FCM's obligation to account for the net gains on the customer's contracts against the customer's obligations. For example, the realization of cumulative trading gains and losses upon Position Liquidation could be viewed as the determination of the respective obligations of the FCM to pay the trading gains and any other profits derived from its activities on behalf of the customer under the customer agreement against the obligations of the customer to indemnify the FCM against any trading losses or other costs or losses incurred in carrying out that activity. As discussed in paragraph 1.40, deducting any net cumulative loss realized in Position Liquidation could also be viewed as reflecting a set-off of the FCM's obligation to repay the customer the cash balance of the customer account (which may include net cumulative gains realized in Position Liquidation and proceeds from Margin Liquidation) against the customer's obligation to pay the FCM an amount equal to any net cumulative losses as well as any chargeable costs.

2.15 The combination of the cash balances across account classes could also be viewed as contractual set-off. See the S&C Memo, Section XI. Although the permitted uses provisions of the Customer Property Rules support set-off within an account class, at first blush, they would not appear to provide support for set-off of credit and debit balances of different account classes. However, customer agreements authorize FCMs to offset these balances against one another. A debit balance in one account class may be applied as a Chargeable Cost to another account class with a credit balance, thereby reducing the customer's claim to, and increasing the FCM's residual interest in,

⁵³ Stated differently, under this characterization, the Determination of Account is the calculation of a running-account balance of all debits and credits to the customer account, which is a determination of the overall value of the single course of dealing between the FCM and the customer represented by the customer account, rather than the set-off of distinct claims arising under separate transactions between the FCM and customer corresponding, on a back-to-back basis, to the contracts between a DCO and the FCM (which would be a structural feature characteristic of principal-to-principal model and inconsistent with the nature of the FCM model as a type of agency model). Additionally, the final cash balance of an account class calculated in the Determination of Account represents the overall position between the FCM and customer with respect to the segregated funds or separate account funds subject to the statutory trust imposed by the applicable Customer Property Rules, and the balance reflects the results of the FCM's withdrawal and application of the segregated funds or separate account funds for permitted uses in connection with its Position Liquidation. As noted in paragraph 2.8, in applying the segregated funds or separate account funds, the FCM is not foreclosing on or enforcing its security interest, or exercising set-off, but rather is acting pursuant to express authority granted it under such Customer Property Rules.

March 23, 2025

the segregated funds or separate account funds of the account class with the credit balance. In other words, by debiting the customer account for the debit balance of one account class, the FCM reduces the customer's claim against the segregated funds or separate account funds for the other account class, as described in paragraph 1.19.⁵⁴

The question of mutuality if the Determination of Account involves set-off

2.16 The S&C Memo addresses the question of whether the FCM's obligation to treat customer funds (including amounts accruing on any of the customer's contracts) as "belonging to" the customer, or the characterization of the FCM as a "statutory trustee," would prevent the FCM from debiting the customer account of an insolvent customer or setting off customer funds credited to the customer account (including in respect of trading gains) against the customer's payment obligations to the FCM (including in respect of trading losses) because they act in different capacities and the obligations of each to the other are not mutual. This question is posed because under New York law, the general rule is that when a creditor's obligations to a debtor arise from a fiduciary duty or in trust, the creditor may not set off those obligations against obligations of the debtor to the creditor. Such a set-off is generally viewed as inconsistent with the fundamental principle that a fiduciary may never deal for its own profit with the subject matter of its trust. An alternative statement of the grounds for prohibiting the set-off is that if the creditor's obligation is in respect of the debtor's property that the creditor holds "without color of lien," then the debtor's claim is a claim to property that cannot be set off against the creditor's debt claim against the debtor. The S&C Memo concludes the FCM's set-off of customer funds to or against the customer's payment obligations to the FCM should not be prohibited for the following reasons:

2.16.1 Any element of trust in the FCM-customer relationship derives either from the requirements under the Customer Property Rules to segregate or set aside customer funds⁵⁵ or from the mere fact that the FCM holds title to the customer's property. To the extent that the applicable Customer Property Rules give rise to a statutory trust for the relevant account class, that statutory trust is – by its own terms – subject to the FCM's right to use customer funds for permitted uses. It is, in fact, specifically intended to ensure that funds are available for those uses. Additionally, the duties and rights of an agent, including an agent that holds title to property of its principal, can be varied by agreement, usage and practice, and by other laws and regulations, such as the Customer Property Rules.

2.16.2 Furthermore, the FCM does have a lien or security interest (under both common law and the customer agreement) in the customer account and any property credited to it. See paragraph 1.37. Under both common law and the customer agreement, as well as under the Customer Property Rules, the FCM has the right, when accounting to its customer, to deduct any advances made from the balance of the account.

2.16.3 Interpreting the fiduciary obligations of the FCM in respect of customer funds to preclude the application of customer funds for permitted uses, or to offset those funds against the customer's obligations to the FCM for permitted uses, would turn the commodities regulatory scheme on its head. In the context of another statutory trust, the Second Circuit Court of Appeals, applying New York law, has held that if a deposit has been made for a particular purpose and would otherwise be available for set-off under applicable state law, a set-off should not be denied on the sole ground that the fund is held under a statutory trust created to protect the depositor's rights in the event no set-off is ever warranted.

⁵⁴ Additionally, it can be argued that the Customer Property Rules permit any excess customer funds held in segregation or set aside for one account class to be applied to any other account class in the context of the customer's default. In the past several years, the CFTC has emphasized the critical role of CFTC Rule 1.56, which prohibits the FCM from guaranteeing its customers against losses arising from trading, in protecting customers generally from fellow-customer risk, and has described the prohibition on guaranteeing as one of its regulations concerned with the protection of customer funds.

⁵⁵ In a number of adjudicatory decisions over the years, CFTC staff has stated that the CFTC's view is that upon a futures customer's default, the FCM's duties to the customer under the Customer Property Rules are subject to, and can be superseded by, the FCM's duties to protect the financial positions of itself and its other customers by exercising remedies against the defaulter. This view undercuts the argument that set-off is inconsistent with the FCM's duties under the Customer Property Rules.

Annex 2
Instructions

ENFORCEABILITY UPON A CUSTOMER’S INSOLVENCY OR OTHER DEFAULT OF THE
POSITION LIQUIDATION, MARGIN LIQUIDATION AND DETERMINATION OF ACCOUNT
PROVISIONS OF A CUSTOMER AGREEMENT PURSUANT TO WHICH A US FUTURES
COMMISSION MERCHANT CLEARS FUTURES AND/OR CLEARED SWAPS FOR THE
CUSTOMER

Dear Sir or Madam:

On behalf of the International Swaps and Derivatives Association, Inc. (“**ISDA**”) and the Futures Industry Association (“**FIA**”), I write this letter to request that your firm prepare for ISDA and FIA a legal opinion regarding the enforceability under the laws of [] (“**your jurisdiction**”) of the Position Liquidation, Margin Liquidation and Determination of Account provisions (collectively, “**remedial provisions**”) of a customer agreement (the “**Covered Agreement**”) pursuant to which a futures commission merchant (the “**FCM**”) registered with the Commodity Futures Trading Commission (the “**CFTC**”) clears Futures and/or Cleared Swaps for a customer located in your jurisdiction (the “**Covered Customer**”).

Capitalized terms used but not defined in this letter have the meanings given such terms in the annex attached hereto (the “**Summary Annex**”).

A Covered Agreement generally consists of (1) a customer account agreement (a “**Base Account Agreement**”) if the Covered Customer trades only Futures, and (2) a Base Account Agreement and a Cleared Derivatives Addendum substantially in the form published by FIA and ISDA in 2012 or 2018 (either, the “**CDA**”) if the Covered Customer trades only Cleared Swaps or trades both Futures and Cleared Swaps. As each of the Base Account Agreement and CDA has its own remedial provisions, your opinion should address the enforceability of the provisions of each of the Base Account Agreement and CDA that, upon an Event of Default with respect to the Covered Customer, provide the FCM the right to engage in Position Liquidation, Margin Liquidation and a Determination of Account to determine a single balance of account as between the FCM and the Covered Customer. The enforceability of such provisions is of importance to FCMs that clear Futures and/or Cleared Swaps pursuant to Covered Agreements as a matter of both credit risk assessment and considerations of capital adequacy.

In connection with the preparation of your opinion, we enclose for your information the two forms of the CDA referred to above and a redline comparing the two. Your opinion should be based on the assumptions describing a CDA below rather than either published form of CDA, but you may assume that both of these published forms meet those assumptions. Please note that there is not an industry-standard published form of Base Account Agreement.

The S&C Memo and Summary Annex

To help you understand the FCM clearing model and applicable US laws and regulations, we are also providing you a legal memorandum that analyzes the FCM model that has been prepared by Sullivan & Cromwell LLP for ISDA and FIA (the “**S&C Memo**”) and the Summary Annex, which provides a high-level overview and summary of the main concepts covered, conclusions reached and certain factual assumptions in the S&C Memo.

Scope of Opinion

Our members have found that it is important (for example, for ensuring the enforceability of the remedial provisions for regulatory capital purposes) that the scope of the opinion be clear and certain, both in terms of the types of transactions covered by the opinion and the types of customers falling within the scope of the opinion.

Covered Transactions/Contracts

As explained above, the types of transactions that may be cleared for the Covered Customer pursuant to the Covered Agreement include US Futures, Foreign Futures and Cleared Swaps (together, “**Covered Transactions**” or “**Covered Contracts**”).

We do not describe herein the scope of transactions that may be Futures or Cleared Swaps (other than the requirements reflected in the definitions set out above).

Covered Customers

Please indicate the types of Covered Customers covered by your opinion in an appendix to your opinion substantially in the form of Appendix A to this letter. Your opinion should, at a minimum, cover customers falling within the categories “Bank/Credit Institution,” “Corporation” and “Investment Firm/Broker Dealer,” as described in Appendix A to this letter, and any other categories of entities covered in your netting and collateral opinions with respect to the ISDA Master Agreement and related credit support documents.

Appendix A sets out a series of commercial descriptions. We understand that these descriptions may not correspond precisely to legal categories under the laws of your jurisdiction. Please indicate, therefore, for each Appendix A category covered by your opinion, the precise legal form for each customer type falling within that category that is covered by your opinion. Please include, if relevant, any naming convention or rule that would help a reader of the opinion to identify and classify the entity (for example, the inclusion of a designation in the legal name of the entity such as “S.A.,” “N.V.,” “A.G.,” “S.p.A,” “Plc,” “Limited” or the like or the mandatory inclusion of a word or words in the name, for example, “Bank” in relation to banks or “Insurance” or “Assurance” in relation to insurance companies).

In relation to each Appendix A category covered by your opinion, if your opinion does not cover all relevant legal forms of customer that are capable of falling within that category in your jurisdiction, please indicate clearly what is excluded. For example, if your opinion covers corporations that fall within the category “Investment Firm/Broker Dealer” but not partnerships that fall within that category, then please indicate that fact.

Finally, we understand that some types of customer may not fall clearly within only one of the category types in Appendix A or otherwise may be difficult to classify. As above, please indicate the precise legal form and any relevant naming conventions or mandatory naming rules for each additional category covered by your opinion.

An example of an entity difficult to classify would be a German Förderbank (development bank), which is owned by the Sovereign (the Federal Republic of Germany) or by a State of a Federal Sovereign (that is, a Bundesland, such as Nordrhein-Westfalen). Therefore, it would be a Sovereign-Owned Entity. It would also be a Bank/Credit Institution if its core business involves taking deposits and making loans. An entity type that is difficult to classify should be dealt with in your opinion as an additional category.

It is most helpful if all information relating to customer scope is presented in the appendix to your opinion in table form and the body of the opinion refers to the appendix without a separate discussion of customer scope. If you feel it is necessary to include a discussion of customer scope within the text of the opinion, please carefully reconcile it with the information presented in Appendix A so that the customer scope of the opinion is clear.

Additional customer types covered by your opinion and for which there is no category set out in the standard Appendix A should be added in additional rows to your appendix.

Generally Applicable Assumptions

You may assume, for purposes of your opinion, that the statements contained in this letter, the Summary Annex and the S&C Memo are true and correct. If you make any additional assumptions for purposes of your opinion, please state them explicitly in your opinion.

For purposes of your opinion, please note that (1) “**Position Liquidation**” includes hedging by the FCM of risk incurred by the FCM in connection with the Covered Customer’s Event of Default (as well as the FCM’s close-out or other liquidation of the Covered Customer’s open positions in Covered Contracts) and (2) “**Margin Liquidation**” refers to the sale, liquidation or other disposition of securities only (and not also to the sale, liquidation or other disposition of any non-cash assets other than securities).

I. Position Liquidation, Margin Liquidation and Determination of Account

A. Additional Assumptions

(a) The FCM and Covered Customer enter into a Covered Agreement (consisting of a Base Account Agreement and CDA) pursuant to which the FCM establishes on its books and records in the Covered Customer’s name, and the Covered Customer authorizes the FCM to execute, clear and carry, US Futures, Cleared Swaps and/or Foreign Futures on behalf of the Covered Customer in a US Futures Account, a Cleared Swaps Account and a Foreign Futures Account, respectively (individually or collectively, the “**Customer Account**” or the “**Account**”).

(b) Each of the Base Account Agreement and the CDA is governed by New York law.

(c) On the basis of the terms and conditions of the Covered Agreement and other relevant factors and acting in a manner consistent with the intentions stated in the Covered Agreement, over time, the Covered Customer trades a number of Covered Contracts that are cleared and carried in or credited to the Customer Account.

(d) Some of the Covered Contracts provide for an exchange of cash and others provide for the physical delivery of shares, bonds or commodities in exchange for cash.

(e) After commencing trading and while the Covered Customer has open positions in Covered Contracts, the Covered Customer, which is organized in your jurisdiction, becomes the subject of a formal bankruptcy, insolvency, liquidation, reorganization, administration or comparable proceeding (collectively, the “**insolvency**”) under the insolvency laws of your jurisdiction and an Event of Default has accordingly occurred under each of the Base Account Agreement and CDA. If there are different types of insolvency proceedings under the laws of your jurisdiction (for example, bankruptcy or liquidation proceedings where an entity does not emerge as a going concern, on the one hand, and a reorganization or administration proceeding where an entity is restructured and does continue as a going concern, on the other hand), please

briefly describe the different types of proceedings and answer each question with respect to each such proceeding.

(f) Subsequent to the commencement of the insolvency, either the Covered Customer or an insolvency official seeks to challenge or otherwise prevent Position Liquidation, Margin Liquidation or operation of the Determination of Account (by, for example, assuming the profitable Covered Transactions for the Covered Customer and rejecting its unprofitable Covered Transactions).

B. Questions to be Addressed

1. Would the parties' agreement on governing law and submission to jurisdiction set out in each of the Base Account Agreement and CDA be given effect by a court in your jurisdiction, and what would be the consequences if they were not?

2. Would the Position Liquidation provisions of each of the Base Account Agreement and the CDA be enforceable under the laws of your jurisdiction and each of the Position Liquidation methods described in Section XI of the S&C Memo and paragraph 2.4 of the Summary Annex be recognized and upheld by a court in your jurisdiction? If a particular method would either not be upheld or may be challenged, please provide further detail and explain the reason for this.

3. Would the FCM's holding of the Covered Contracts as an "agent-trustee" be recognized by a court in your jurisdiction as creating a valid trust over the Covered Contracts or would the court otherwise recognize the FCM's legal title to, and the Covered Customer's beneficial interest in, the Covered Contracts?

(a) If so, would the court characterize Position Liquidation as the FCM's exercising its contractual rights as principal vis-à-vis the DCO under the relevant DCO rules (or vis-à-vis the Foreign Futures Broker under the clearing agreement between the FCM and Foreign Futures Broker) and not as the FCM's acting as the Covered Customer's agent or as the FCM's enforcing its security interest in the Covered Contracts?

(b) Could the FCM's holding of the Covered Customer's Contracts be characterized as some alternative arrangement, such as a commission agency or as a collateral security arrangement? If so, how would the FCM's Position Liquidation be characterized under the laws of your jurisdiction?

4. Would a court in your jurisdiction recognize the statutory trust with respect to the Segregated Funds or Separate Account Funds of each Account Class as creating a valid trust over such Segregated Funds or Separate Account Funds, and that under the terms of that trust, the FCM holds the legal title to, and the Covered Customer holds a beneficial interest in, the statutory trust as a whole (as opposed to maintaining an interest in any specific assets under the trust)? Could the statutory trust with respect to the Segregated Funds or Separate Account Funds of any Account Class be characterized as some alternative arrangement (e.g., as a collateral security arrangement)?

(a) Would the Margin Liquidation provisions of each of the Base Account Agreement and CDA be enforceable under the laws of your jurisdiction and the FCM's Margin Liquidation in respect of each Account Class be recognized and upheld by a court in your jurisdiction? Could such Margin Liquidation be capable of exercise based on the FCM's exercise of its right under the applicable Customer Property Rules to withdraw and apply Segregated Funds or Separate Account Funds, as the case may be, for Permitted Uses (the FCM's "**Permitted Uses Rights**") rather than by the enforcement of its security interest in the Covered Customer's Collateral consisting of securities?

(b) Would the Determination of Account provisions of each of the Based Account Agreement and CDA be enforceable under the laws of your jurisdiction and the FCM's Determination of Account in respect of (i) each Account Class and (ii) all Account Classes on a combined basis be recognized and upheld by a court in your jurisdiction and if so, how could each Determination of Account be characterized (e.g., contractual accounting, netting or set-off, enforcement of the security interest in cash Collateral or some combination of the foregoing)?

5. Are there any other circumstances in your jurisdiction, including any moratorium, stay, freeze or other consequence of the commencement of an insolvency proceeding, you can foresee that might affect the FCM's ability to exercise Position Liquidation, Margin Liquidation or a Determination of Account in respect of an Account Class or the overall Customer Account (comprising the three Account Classes)?

6. Under the laws of your jurisdiction, are any rights or processes available to a creditor of a Covered Customer by which such creditor could make a claim against the Segregated Funds or Separate Account Funds held subject to the statutory trust (or otherwise in accordance with the Customer Property Rules) in respect of each Account Class or against the Covered Contracts (and any rights in respect thereof) held by the FCM as agent-trustee for the benefit of the Covered Customer and the FCM's other customers in such Account Class as opposed to only having recourse to the final cash balance or single net termination amount that constitutes the Determination of Account for such Account Class or the overall Customer Account (comprising the three Account Classes)?

7. Assuming the parties have entered into the Covered Agreement, the Covered Customer is insolvent and the FCM has determined a lump-sum cash balance or net termination amount in a currency other than the currency of the jurisdiction in which the insolvent customer is organized:

(a) Would a court in your jurisdiction enforce a claim for the cash balance or net termination amount in the currency in which it was determined?

(b) Can a claim for the cash balance or net termination amount be proved in insolvency proceedings in your jurisdiction without conversion into the local currency?

If in either case the claim must be converted to local currency for purposes of enforcement or proof in insolvency proceedings, please set out the rules governing the timing and exchange rate for such conversion.

8. Are there any other local law considerations that you would recommend the FCM to consider in connection with the exercise of Position Liquidation, Margin Liquidation or a Determination of Account?

II. Creation, Perfection and Enforcement of FCM's Security Interest in Covered Collateral

A. Fact Patterns Regarding Location of the Covered Customer and Covered Collateral

We set out below three principal fact patterns we would like you to consider in answering the questions below. Please address these questions in your opinion even if you have concluded that Margin Liquidation would be recognized by a court in your jurisdiction as the FCM's exercise of its Permitted Uses Rights and the Determination of Account would be characterized as contractual accounting or as involving netting or set-off, as discussed in Question 4 above.

The three principal fact patterns concern (a) whether or not the Location (as defined below) of the Covered Customer is in your jurisdiction and (b) whether or not the Location of the Covered Collateral (as defined below) is in your jurisdiction.

In particular, when responding to each question, could you please distinguish between the following three fact patterns:

- I. The Location of the Covered Customer is in your jurisdiction and the Location of the Covered Collateral is outside your jurisdiction.
- II. The Location of the Covered Customer is in your jurisdiction and the Location of the Covered Collateral is in your jurisdiction.
- III. The Location of the Covered Customer is outside your jurisdiction and the Location of the Covered Collateral is in your jurisdiction.

For the foregoing purposes:

- (a) the “Location” of the Covered Customer is in your jurisdiction if it resides, is incorporated or otherwise organized in your jurisdiction and/or if it has a branch or other place of business in your jurisdiction; and
- (b) the “Location” of Covered Collateral is the place where an asset of that type is located under the private international law rules of your jurisdiction.

“**Located**” when used below in relation to a Covered Customer or any Covered Collateral should be construed accordingly.

In relation to (a), if under the laws of your jurisdiction, the Location of an entity would be determined on a different basis and this would affect your conclusions, please set out the relevant rules and explain their consequences.

In considering fact patterns I and II, please indicate whether and, if so, in which circumstances it makes a difference whether the Covered Customer (i) is incorporated or otherwise organized in your jurisdiction or (ii) is a foreign entity with a branch or other place of business in your jurisdiction.

If the location of the FCM would affect your response to any question, please make this clear in the relevant response.

B. *Additional Assumptions*

Please assume the same facts as set forth in Part I above (as applicable) with the following modifications:

- (a) “**Covered Collateral**” means the Covered Customer’s Collateral consisting of (1) the Customer Account, (2) the Covered Customer’s Covered Contracts, (3) cash credited to an account (as opposed to physical notes and coins) and (4) the types of securities that are identified below and that are Located or deemed Located either (i) in your jurisdiction or (ii) outside your jurisdiction.¹

¹ Please see footnote 36 of the Summary Annex and Section X of the S&C Memo for a description of the Covered Customer’s rights and property interests represented by (1) its Customer Account (which you may assume constitutes in the case of its Futures Account, a “commodity account,” as defined in Article 9 of the UCC) and, in the case of its Cleared Swaps Account, a “securities account” (as defined in Article 8 of the UCC), and (2) its Covered Contracts, which you may assume constitute, in the case of its Futures, “commodity contracts” (as defined in Article 9 of the UCC) and, in the case of its Cleared Swaps, “security entitlements” to “financial assets” (as defined in Article 8 of the UCC). As indicated in footnote 36, it is likely that a security interest in the Customer Account represents a security

(b) Please assume that Covered Collateral in the form of cash is denominated in a freely convertible currency and is credited to an account under the “control” of the FCM for purposes of the New York Uniform Commercial Code (the “UCC”), as described in paragraph 1.40 of the Summary Annex.

(c) Our expectation is that the FCM will normally hold debt securities in the form of intermediated debt securities rather than directly in one of the three forms mentioned in (i), (ii) and (iii) below. In this case, and as described in Section 1.41 of the Summary Annex, the FCM, acting as the Covered Customer’s “securities intermediary,” will credit “security entitlements” to those securities to the Account, which will constitute a “securities account” (as each of those terms is defined under Article 8 of the UCC). However, for purposes of the analysis, please assume that the following types of securities considered to be Covered Collateral are denominated in either the currency of your jurisdiction or any freely convertible currency and consist of (i) corporate debt securities whether or not the issuer is organized or located in your jurisdiction; (ii) debt securities issued by the government of your jurisdiction; and (iii) debt securities issued by the government of a member of the “G-10” group of countries, in one of the following forms:

(i) directly held bearer debt securities: by this we mean debt securities issued in certificated form, in bearer form (meaning that ownership is transferable by delivery of possession of the certificate) and, when held by the FCM as Collateral under the Covered Agreement, held directly in this form by the FCM (that is, not held by the FCM indirectly through an Intermediary (as defined below));

(ii) directly held registered debt securities: by this we mean debt securities issued in registered form and, when held by the FCM as Collateral under the Covered Agreement, held directly in this form by the FCM so that the FCM is shown as the relevant holder in the register for such securities (that is, not held by the FCM indirectly with an Intermediary);

(iii) directly held dematerialized debt securities: by this we mean debt securities issued in dematerialized form and, when held by the FCM as Collateral under the Covered Agreement, held directly in this form by the FCM so that the FCM is shown as the relevant holder in the electronic register for such securities (that is, not held by the FCM indirectly with an Intermediary);

(iv) intermediated debt securities: by this we mean a form of interest in debt securities recorded in fungible book-entry form in an account maintained by a financial intermediary (which could be a central securities depository (“CSD”) or a custodian, nominee or other form of financial intermediary, in each case an “**Intermediary**”) in the name of the FCM where such interest has been credited to the account of the FCM in connection with a deposit of Collateral by the Covered Customer with the FCM under the Covered Agreement.

interest in all property credited to the Account, including the Covered Customer’s pro rata beneficial interest in Customer Funds maintained pursuant to the applicable Customer Property Rules. Given that your opinion will analyze the security interest in the cash and securities credited to the Account, it may be that consideration of the security interest in the Account itself will superfluous. Similarly, analysis of the security interest in the Covered Contracts may be of little value since the FCM would not be expected to enforce its security interest in the Covered Contracts in order to close them out.

However, FCMs would prefer inclusion of such analysis in order to assess whether failure to perfect the FCM’s security interest in either the Customer Account or the Covered Contracts under the laws of your jurisdiction could result in the ability of a creditor of the Covered Customer to assert rights like those described in question 6 above. If there are considerations under the laws of your jurisdiction that would make such analysis unnecessarily burdensome, please contact ISDA-FIA.

(d) In the case of questions 10 to 12 and 16 in Part C below, if relevant, please also assume that after the Covered Customer commences clearing under the Covered Agreement and while it has open positions in Covered Contracts, an Event of Default occurs with respect to the Covered Customer, and/or, if applicable, the FCM has designated a date to begin closing out or otherwise liquidating the Covered Contracts as a result thereof (however, an insolvency proceeding has not been instituted, which is addressed separately in assumption (e) and questions 13 to 15 below).

(e) In the case of questions 13 to 15 in Part C below, if relevant, please assume that the Covered Customer has become subject to insolvency proceedings in your jurisdiction.

(f) Please note the following point regarding substitution of Covered Collateral consisting of cash or securities. We understand that Base Account Agreements typically provide that, following closure of an open position by a customer, a FCM is under no obligation to return the same assets (*e.g.*, a security with the same ISIN/CUSIP number) posted by the customer, but the FCM may agree to provide equivalent assets, if practicable. For example, if the customer posted 5-year treasuries, the FCM would endeavor to return 5-year treasuries if practicable, but not necessarily the same ISIN/CUSIP. In some cases, the FCM might agree to a more stringent obligation to return equivalent assets, if practicable. However, it is not market practice for a Base Account Agreement to provide for an unqualified obligation on a FCM to return the same asset (contrast this position with paragraph 4(d) of either the 1994 ISDA Credit Support Annex (Bilateral Form) or the 1995 ISDA Credit Support Deed (Bilateral Form – Security Interest)).

We also understand that, as a matter of market practice, FCMs often offer their customers the ability to manage the collateral posted by the customer, for example by allowing the customer to post 10-year treasuries and returning 5-year treasuries to the customer. However, this is purely a matter of market practice, not a right of the customer explicitly provided in the agreement.

As Base Account Agreements typically do not include a right to substitute collateral, this letter does not include a question regarding the effect of substitution rights on the validity, continuity, perfection or priority of the security interest. However, please let us know if you think the market practice described above raises any questions that should be addressed in the opinion.

Please see the discussion of the FCM's rights with respect to investment of Covered Collateral consisting of cash in paragraphs 1.16 and 1.20, and the FCM's rights to repledge, rehypothecate or dispose of Covered Collateral consisting of securities in footnote 38 of the Summary Annex. You may assume the Base Account Agreement contains a written authorization to liquidate securities Covered Collateral at the FCM's discretion, as described in footnote 38.

C. *Questions to be Addressed*

Creation and perfection of the security interest

1. Under the laws of your jurisdiction, what law governs the contractual aspects of the security interest in the various forms of Covered Collateral?

2. Under the laws of your jurisdiction, what law governs the proprietary aspects of the security interest in the different types of Covered Collateral (that is, the formalities required to protect the security interest against competing claims) granted by the Covered Customer (for example, the law of the jurisdiction of incorporation or organization of the Covered Customer, the jurisdiction where the Covered Collateral is Located or the jurisdiction of location of the FCM as the Covered Customer's Intermediary, in relation to Covered Collateral in the form of indirectly held securities)? What factors would be relevant to this question? If the Location (or deemed Location) of the Covered Collateral is the determining factor, please

briefly describe the principles governing such determination under the law of your jurisdiction with respect to the different types of Covered Collateral. If relevant, please describe how the laws of your jurisdiction apply to each form in which securities Covered Collateral may be held as described in assumption (b) above.

3. Would the courts of your jurisdiction recognize the validity of a security interest in the different types of Covered Collateral, assuming it is valid under New York law? In answering this question, please bear in mind the different forms in which securities Covered Collateral may be held, as described in the assumptions above. Please indicate, in relation to cash Covered Collateral, if your answer depends on the location of the account in which the relevant deposit obligations are recorded and/or upon the currency of those obligations.

4. What is the effect, if any, under the laws of your jurisdiction of the fact that the amount secured or the amount of any cash or securities Covered Collateral subject to the security interest will fluctuate under the Covered Agreement (including as a result of entering into additional Covered Transactions from time to time)? In particular:

(a) Would the security interest be valid in relation to future obligations of the Covered Customer?

(b) Would the security interest be valid in relation to future Covered Collateral (that is, Covered Collateral not yet delivered to the FCM at the time of entry into the Covered Agreement)?

(c) Is there any difficulty with the concept of creating the security interest over a fluctuating pool of assets, for example, by reason of the impossibility of identifying in the Covered Agreement the specific assets deposited by the Covered Customer with the FCM?

(d) Is it necessary under the laws of your jurisdiction for the amount secured by the security interest to be a fixed amount or subject to a fixed maximum amount?

(e) Is it permissible under the laws of your jurisdiction for the FCM to hold Customer Collateral in excess of its actual exposure to the Covered Customer under the Covered Agreement?

In relation to (a), it is understood that the security interest in any specific Covered Collateral would only be relevant in relation to future obligations, if ever, at the time such future obligations arise and then only in relation to Covered Collateral held at that time. This question concerns whether it would be necessary for either party to perform any action at such time in order to ensure the effectiveness of the security interest as security for such obligations or whether the security interest would take effect in relation to those future obligations without further action by either party.

In relation to (b), it is understood that the security interest in the different types of Covered Collateral to be delivered at some point in the future after the time of entry into the Covered Agreement would not take effect in relation to such Covered Collateral until it had been delivered to the FCM in accordance with the Covered Agreement. This question concerns whether it would be necessary for either party to perform any action at such time in order to ensure the effectiveness of the security interest in relation to such Covered Collateral or whether the security interest in relation to such Covered Collateral would take effect without further action (other than the delivery) by either party.

In relation to (c), you may assume that each specific delivery to the FCM and return by the FCM of Covered Collateral consisting of cash or securities under the Covered Agreement from time to time would be properly recorded by the FCM, so that, while the pool of Collateral would change from time to time, at any specific time the composition of the pool of Collateral could be clearly identified by the FCM.

5. Assuming that the courts of your jurisdiction would recognize the security interest in each type of Covered Collateral, is any action (filing, registration, notification, stamping, notarization or any other action or the obtaining of any governmental, judicial, regulatory or other order, consent or approval) required in your jurisdiction to perfect the security interest? If so, please indicate what actions must be taken and how such actions may differ, if at all, depending upon the type of Covered Collateral which is subject to the security interest.

6. If there are any other requirements to ensure the validity or perfection of the security interest in each type of Covered Collateral, please indicate the nature of such requirements. Are there any other documentary formalities that must be observed in order for the security interest in any type of Covered Collateral to be recognized as valid and perfected in your jurisdiction?

7. Assuming that the FCM has obtained a valid and perfected security interest under the laws of your jurisdiction, to the extent such laws apply, by complying with the requirements set forth in your responses to questions C.1 to C.6 above, as applicable, will the FCM or the Covered Customer need to take any action thereafter to ensure that the security interest continues to be and/or remains perfected, particularly with respect to additional cash or securities Covered Collateral transferred from time to time when required pursuant to the Covered Agreement?

8. Are there any particular duties, obligations or limitations imposed on the FCM in relation to the care of the Covered Collateral held by it pursuant to the security interest?

9. Do the laws of your jurisdiction recognize the right of the FCM to use cash or securities Covered Collateral (as described in additional assumption II.B.(f) above) pursuant to an agreement with the Covered Customer? In particular, how does such use of the Covered Collateral affect, if at all, the validity, continuity, perfection or priority of the security interest otherwise validly created and perfected prior to such use? Are there any other obligations, duties or limitations imposed on the FCM with respect to its use of such Covered Collateral under the laws of your jurisdiction?

Enforcement of the security interest in Covered Collateral in the absence of an insolvency proceeding

Note the additional assumption in II.B.(d) above which applies to questions 10 through 12 below.

10. Assuming that the FCM has obtained a valid and perfected security interest under the laws of your jurisdiction, to the extent such laws apply, by complying with the requirements set forth in your responses to questions 1 to 6 above, as applicable, what are the formalities (including the necessity to obtain a court order or conduct an auction), notification requirements (to the Covered Customer or any other person) or other procedures, if any, that the FCM must observe or undertake in enforcing its security interest as an FCM under the Covered Agreement? For example, is it free to sell the Covered Collateral (including to itself) and apply the proceeds to satisfy the Covered Customer's outstanding obligations under the Covered Agreement? Do such formalities or procedures differ depending on the type of Covered Collateral involved?

11. Are there any laws or regulations in your jurisdiction that would limit or distinguish a creditor's enforcement rights with respect to the security interest in any type of Covered Collateral depending on (a) the type of transaction underlying the creditor's exposure, (b) the type of Collateral or (c) the nature of the creditor or the debtor? For example, are there any types of "statutory liens" that would be deemed to take precedence over a security interest?

12. How would your response to questions 10 and 11 change, if at all, assuming that an insolvency proceeding above has occurred with respect to the FCM (notwithstanding that the Covered Agreement may not provide for any events of default in respect of the FCM) rather than or in addition to the Covered Customer (for example, would this affect this ability of the FCM to enforce its security interest in Covered Collateral)?

Enforcement of the security in Covered Collateral after the commencement of an insolvency proceeding

Note the additional assumption in II.B.(e) above which applies to questions 13 through 15 below.

13. How are competing priorities between creditors determined in your jurisdiction? What conditions must be satisfied if the FCM's security interest in each type of Covered Collateral is to have priority over all other claims (secured or unsecured) of an interest in the Covered Collateral?

14. Would the FCM's enforcement of its security interest in any type of Covered Collateral be subject to any stay, moratorium or freeze or otherwise be affected by commencement of the insolvency (that is, how does the institution of an insolvency proceeding change your response to question 10 above, if at all)?

15. Will the Covered Customer (or its administrator, provisional liquidator, conservator, receiver, trustee, custodian or other similar official) be able to recover any transfers of Covered Collateral consisting of cash or securities made to the FCM during a certain "suspect period" preceding the date of the insolvency as a result of such a transfer constituting a "preference," fraudulent transfer or transaction at an undervalue (however called and whether or not fraudulent) in favor of the FCM or on any other basis? If so, how long before the insolvency does this suspect period begin? Would the posting of additional margin (which could be required when an Account's net liquidating equity has fallen below the required margin level for the Account due to trading losses in respect of one or more Covered Transactions) during the suspect period be subject to avoidance, either because the Covered Collateral was considered to relate to an antecedent or pre-existing obligation or for some other reason?

Note the additional assumption in II.B.(d) above which applies to question 16 below.

16. Assuming that (a) pursuant to the laws of your jurisdiction, the laws of another jurisdiction govern the creation and/or perfection of the security interest (for example, because such Covered Collateral is Located or deemed Located outside your jurisdiction) and (b) the FCM has obtained a valid and perfected security interest under the laws of such other jurisdiction, are there any formalities, notification requirements or other procedures, if any, that the FCM must observe or undertake in your jurisdiction in enforcing its security interest in Covered Collateral?

Additional considerations

17. Are there any other local law considerations that you would recommend the FCM to consider in connection with enforcing its security interest in Covered Collateral?

18. Are there any other circumstances you can foresee that might affect the FCM's ability to enforce its security interest in the Covered Collateral in your jurisdiction?

We would ask that you set forth each question in Sections I.B and, if relevant, II.C of this letter in italics in your opinion, followed by your response to that question.

Yours faithfully,

[INSERT NAME]

CUSTOMER TYPES²

Description	Covered by opinion	Legal form(s) ³
<p><u>Bank/Credit Institution.</u> A legal entity, which may be organized as a corporation, partnership or in some other form, that conducts commercial banking activities, that is, whose core business typically involves (a) taking deposits from private individuals and/or corporate entities and (b) making loans to private individual and/or corporate borrowers. This type of entity is sometimes referred to as a “commercial bank” or, if its business also includes investment banking and trading activities, a “universal bank”. (If the entity <u>only</u> conducts investment banking and trading activities, then it falls within the “Investment Firm/Broker Dealer” category below.) This type of entity is referred to as a “credit institution” in European Community (EC) legislation. This category may include specialised types of bank, such as a mortgage savings bank (provided that the relevant entity accepts deposits and makes loans), or such an entity may be considered in the local jurisdiction to constitute a separate category of legal entity (as in the case of a building society in the United Kingdom (UK)).</p>	<p>[Yes][No]</p>	
<p><u>Central Bank.</u> A legal entity that performs the function of a central bank for a Sovereign or for an area of monetary union (as in the case of the European Central Bank in respect of the euro zone).</p>		
<p><u>Corporation.</u> A legal entity that is organized as a corporation or company rather than a partnership, is engaged in industrial and/or commercial activities and does not fall within one of the other categories in this Appendix B.</p>		

² In these definitions, the term “legal entity” means an entity with legal personality, other than a private individual.

³ If appropriate, please indicate, as discussed in the instruction letter, any naming convention or rule that would help a reader of the opinion to identify and classify the entity.

Description	Covered by opinion	Legal form(s) ³
<p><u>Hedge Fund/Proprietary Trader.</u> A legal entity, which may be organized as a corporation, partnership or in some other legal form, the principal business of which is to deal in and/or manage securities and/or other financial instruments and/or otherwise to carry on an investment business predominantly or exclusively as principal for its own account.</p>		
<p><u>Insurance Company.</u> A legal entity, which may be organised as a corporation, partnership or in some other legal form (for example, a friendly society or industrial & provident society in the UK), that is licensed to carry on insurance business, and is typically subject to a special regulatory regime and a special insolvency regime in order to protect the interests of policyholders.</p>		
<p><u>International Organization.</u> An organization of Sovereigns established by treaty entered into between the Sovereigns, including the International Bank for Reconstruction and Development (the World Bank), regional development banks and similar organizations established by treaty.</p>		
<p><u>Investment Firm/Broker Dealer.</u> A legal entity, which may be organized as a corporation, partnership or in some other form, that does not conduct commercial banking activities but deals in and/or manages securities and/or other financial instruments as an agent for third parties. It may also conduct such activities as principal (but if it does so exclusively as principal, then it most likely falls within the “Hedge Fund/Proprietary Trader” category above.) Its business normally includes holding securities and/or other financial instruments for third parties and operating related cash accounts. This type of entity is referred to as a “broker-dealer” in US legislation and as an “investment firm” in EC legislation.</p>		
<p><u>Investment Fund.</u> A legal entity or an arrangement without legal personality (for example, a common law trust) established to provide investors with a share in profits or income arising from property acquired, held,</p>		

Description	Covered by opinion	Legal form(s) ³
<p>managed or disposed of by the manager(s) of the legal entity or arrangement or a right to payment determined by reference to such profits or income. This type of entity or arrangement is referred to as a “collective investment scheme” in EC legislation. It may be regulated or unregulated. It is typically administered by one or more persons (who may be private individuals and/or corporate entities) who have various rights and obligations governed by general law and/or, typically in the case of regulated Investment Funds, financial services legislation. Where the arrangement does not have separate legal personality, one or more representatives of the Investment Fund (for example, a trustee of a unit trust) contract on behalf of the Investment Fund, are owed the rights and owe the obligations provided for in the contract and are entitled to be indemnified out of the assets comprised in the arrangement.</p>		
<p><u>Local Authority</u>. A legal entity established to administer the functions of local government in a particular region within a Sovereign or State of a Federal Sovereign, for example, a city, county, borough or similar area.</p>		
<p><u>Partnership</u>. A legal entity or form of arrangement without legal personality that is (a) organised as a general, limited or some other form of partnership and (b) does not fall within one of the other categories in this Appendix B. If it does not have legal personality, it may nonetheless be treated as though it were a legal person for certain purposes (for example, for insolvency purposes) and not for other purposes (for example, tax or personal liability).</p>		

Description	Covered by opinion	Legal form(s) ³
<p><u>Pension Fund.</u> A legal entity or an arrangement without legal personality (for example, a common law trust) established to provide pension benefits to a specific class of beneficiaries, normally sponsored by an employer or group of employers. It is typically administered by one or more persons (who may be private individuals and/or corporate entities) who have various rights and obligations governed by pensions legislation. Where the arrangement does not have separate legal personality, one or more representatives of the Pension Fund (for example, a trustee of a pension scheme in the form of a common law trust) contract on behalf of the Pension Fund and are owed the rights and owe the obligations provided for in the contract and are entitled to be indemnified out of the assets comprised in the arrangement.</p>		
<p><u>Sovereign.</u> A sovereign nation state recognized internationally as such, typically acting through a direct agency or instrumentality of the central government without separate legal personality, for example, the ministry of finance, treasury or national debt office. This category does not include a State of a Federal Sovereign or other political sub-division of a sovereign nation state if the sub-division has separate legal personality (for example, a Local Authority) and it does not include any legal entity owned by a sovereign nation state (see “Sovereign-owned Entity”).</p>		
<p><u>Sovereign Wealth Fund.</u> A legal entity, often created by a special statute and normally wholly owned by a Sovereign, established to manage assets of or on behalf of the Sovereign, which may or may not hold those assets in its own name. Such an entity is often referred to as an “investment authority”. For certain Sovereigns, this function is performed by the Central Bank, however for purposes of this Appendix B the term “Sovereign Wealth Fund” excludes a Central Bank.</p>		
<p><u>Sovereign-Owned Entity.</u> A legal entity wholly or majority-owned by a Sovereign, other than a Central Bank, or by a State of a Federal Sovereign, which may</p>		

Description	Covered by opinion	Legal form(s)³
<p>or may not benefit from any immunity enjoyed by the Sovereign or State of a Federal Sovereign from legal proceedings or execution against its assets. This category may include entities active entirely in the private sector without any specific public duties or public sector mission as well as statutory bodies with public duties (for example, a statutory body charged with regulatory responsibility over a sector of the domestic economy). This category does not include local governmental authorities (see “Local Authority”).</p>		
<p><u>State of a Federal Sovereign.</u> The principal political subdivision of a federal Sovereign, such as Australia (for example, Queensland), Canada (for example, Ontario), Germany (for example, Nordrhein-Westfalen) or the United States of America (for example, Pennsylvania). This category does not include a Local Authority.</p>		